

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a symbol **NOTICE**. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols   or   on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

 or  is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

#### **Safety Labels** P. 89

## A Few Words About Safety

---

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

 **DANGER** You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING** You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **CAUTION** You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

## **Event Data Recorders**

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

## **Service Diagnostic Recorders**

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

## **Vehicle Data Recordings**

This vehicle records the following information as data when the Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) is operated.

- Images of objects in front of the vehicle when the CMBS is activated
- Operational status of each function of the CMBS
- Accelerator / brake pedal operation
- Vehicle speed
- Information such as distance and relative speed of the target identified by the CMBS activated

Honda may obtain and use the recorded data for the purpose of technical diagnosis and research and development of Honda vehicles.

The CMBS does not record images or audio inside the vehicle. Special tools are required to review or remove data (including images) recorded by CMBS.

The CMBS image recording function can be turned off so that no images are recorded when CMBS is activated.

### **Disclosure of data**

Honda will not disclose or provide the acquired data to third parties with data recorded by CMBS except in the following cases:

- When the owner of the vehicle consents
- When required by law, court order, or similar legally enforceable request
- When the data has been processed to de-identify/anonymise the vehicles/users, such as when aggregate data is provided to research institutions

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

## ➤ Safe Driving P. 33

For Safe Driving P. 34      Seat Belts P. 38      Airbags P. 49

## ➤ Instrument Panel P. 91

Indicators P. 92      Gauges and Driver Information Interface P. 109

## ➤ Controls P. 133

Clock P. 134      Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 136  
Windows P. 155      Sunroof\* P. 159  
Seats P. 183      Interior Convenience Items P. 191

## ➤ Features P. 205

## ➤ Driving P. 207

Before Driving P. 208      Towing a Trailer P. 211      When Driving P. 212  
Refueling P. 309      Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions P. 311

## ➤ Maintenance P. 313

Before Performing Maintenance P. 314      Maintenance Schedule P. 317  
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 342  
Remote Transmitter Care P. 352  
Accessories and Modifications P. 360

## ➤ Handling the Unexpected P. 363

Tools P. 364      If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 365  
Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 396      Overheating P. 397

## ➤ Information P. 419

Specifications P. 420      Identification Numbers P. 422

# Contents

Child Safety P. 59

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 88

Safety Labels P. 89

Quick Reference Guide | P. 4

Opening and Closing the Boot P. 150

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 161

Climate Control System P. 200

Security System P. 153

Mirrors P. 180

Safe Driving | P. 33

Honda Sensing\* P. 243

Braking P. 294

Parking Your Vehicle P. 303

Controls | P. 133

Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 322

Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 344

Climate Control System Maintenance P. 353

Replacing Light Bulbs P. 332

12-Volt Battery P. 349

Cleaning P. 355

Features | P. 205

Handling of the Jack P. 389

Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 399

Power System Won't Start P. 390

Fuses P. 406

If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead P. 393

Emergency Towing P. 418

Driving | P. 207

Devices that Emit Radio Waves\* P. 423

TCU Open Source Licence\* P. 424

Instrument Panel | P. 91

Controls | P. 133

Features | P. 205

Driving | P. 207

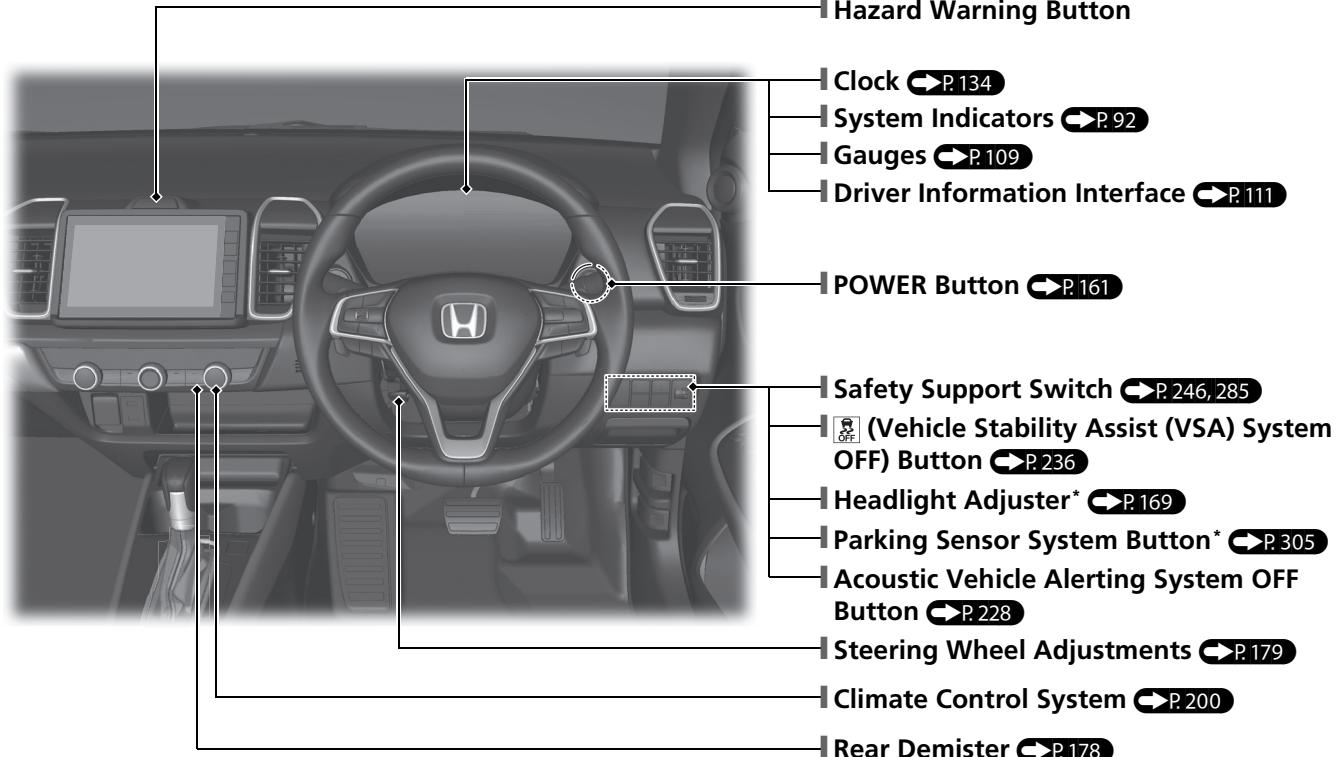
Maintenance | P. 313

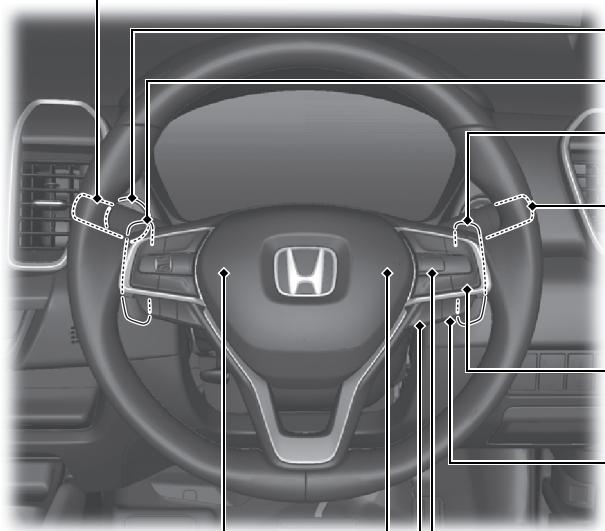
Handling the Unexpected | P. 363

Information | P. 419

Index | P. 425

# Visual Index





African models

Headlights/Turn Signals ➔ P. 164, 165

Fog Lights ➔ P. 168

Except African models

Wipers/Washers ➔ P. 175

Brightness Control ➔ P. 177

Paddle Shifter [ ] \* ➔ P. 224

Paddle Shifter [+] \* ➔ P. 224

Except African models

Headlights/Turn Signals ➔ P. 164, 165

Fog Lights \* ➔ P. 168

African models

Wipers/Washers ➔ P. 175

Cruise Control Buttons \* ➔ P. 231

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button \* ➔ P. 274

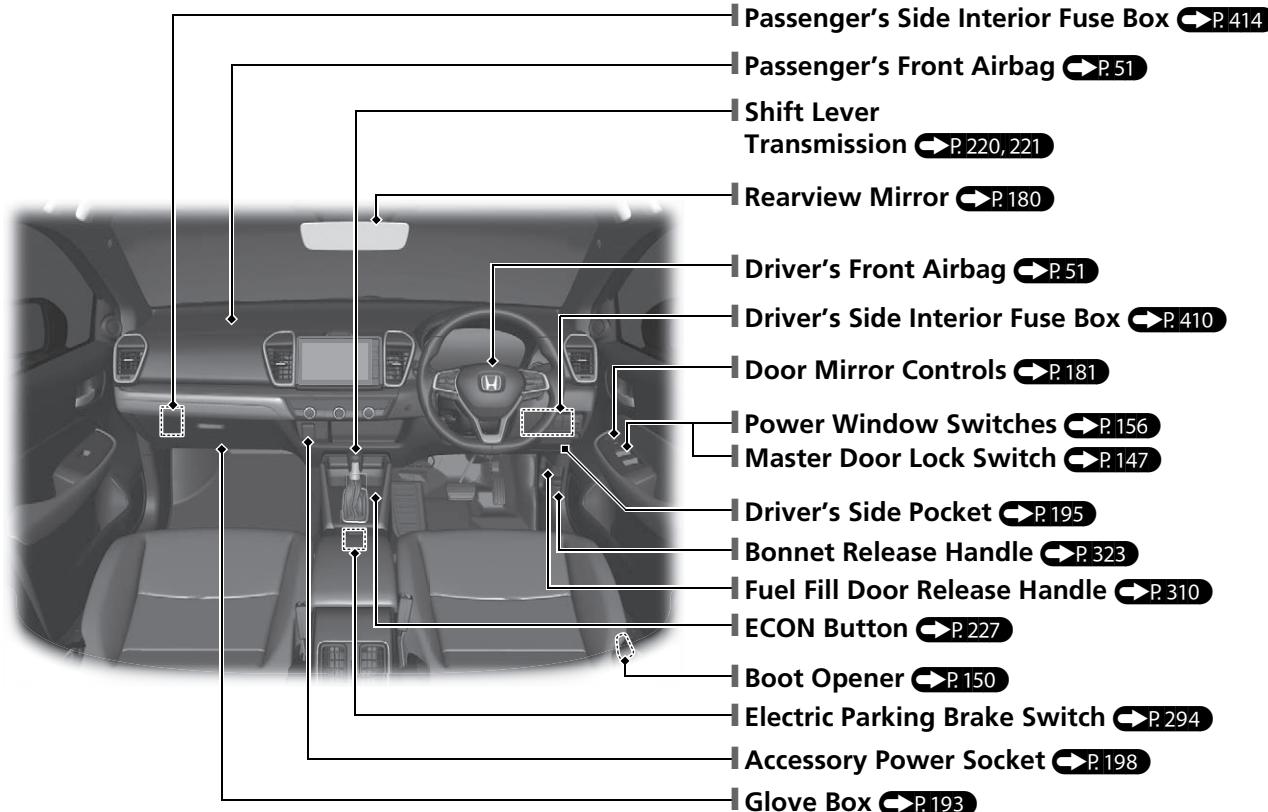
CRUISE Button \* ➔ P. 229

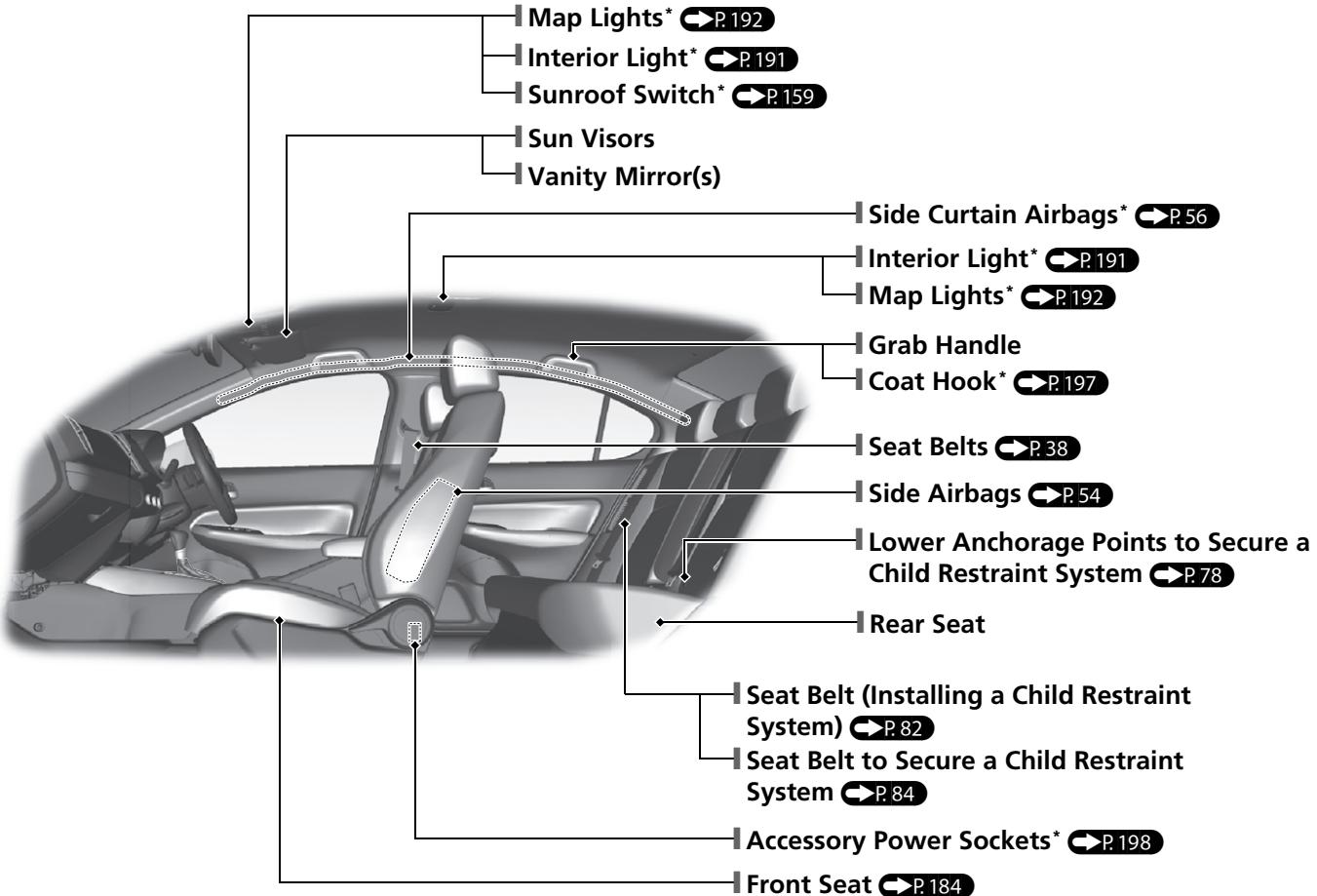
[ ] Button \* ➔ P. 258

Interval Button \* ➔ P. 258

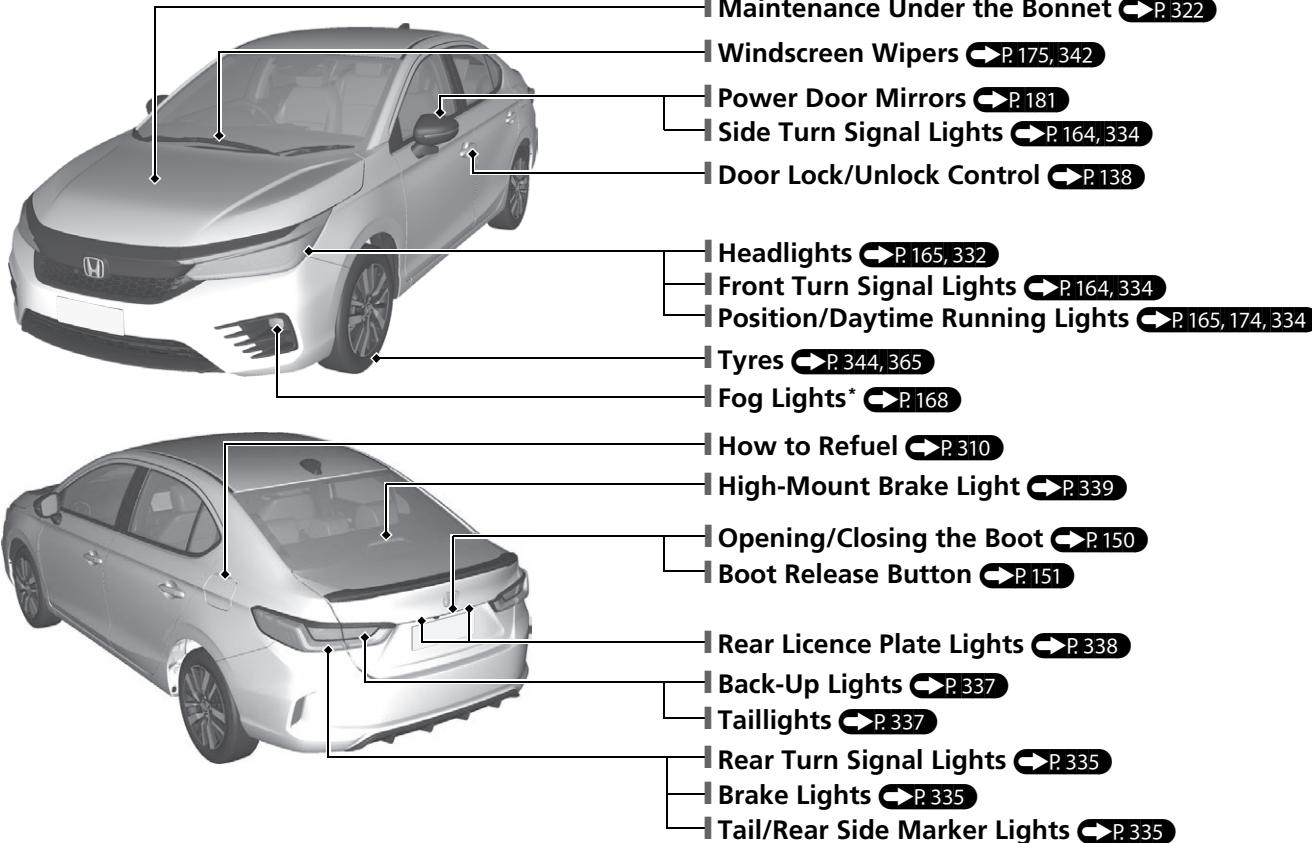
Horn (Press an area around [ ])

# Visual Index





# Visual Index



# e:HEV

Your e:HEV vehicle uses both an electric motor and a petrol engine as propulsion sources, with the electric motor receiving electricity from an internal High Voltage battery or internal generator. The High Voltage battery is charged from the generator driven by the engine or regenerative braking.

When driving, your vehicle is propelled exclusively by the electric motor, exclusively by the petrol engine, or by a combination of the two. The system selects which propulsion source is most appropriate and automatically switches to it.

## ● Energy efficiency

As with a petrol-powered vehicle, hybrid vehicle fuel efficiency and driving range is most impacted by your driving style. Aggressive acceleration and high-speed driving can easily trigger the system to switch the propulsion source to the petrol-powered engine. In addition, heavy climate control system use negatively affects vehicle range and efficiency. Either of these use patterns will more quickly reduce the High Voltage battery's state of charge.

## ● Battery types

There are two types of batteries used in this vehicle; a standard 12-volt battery that powers the airbags, the interior and exterior lights, and other standard 12-volt systems; and a High Voltage battery that is used to power the propulsion motor and recharge the 12-volt battery.

## e:HEV MAIN COMPONENTS

**Petrol Engine**– Runs the generator and under certain conditions, drives the wheels directly.

**Generator**– Starts the engine and generates electric power when driven by the petrol engine to supply electricity to power the electric motor and/or to charge the High Voltage battery.

**Electric Motor**– Provides propulsion to drive the wheels in conjunction with the petrol engine in certain conditions, and provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.

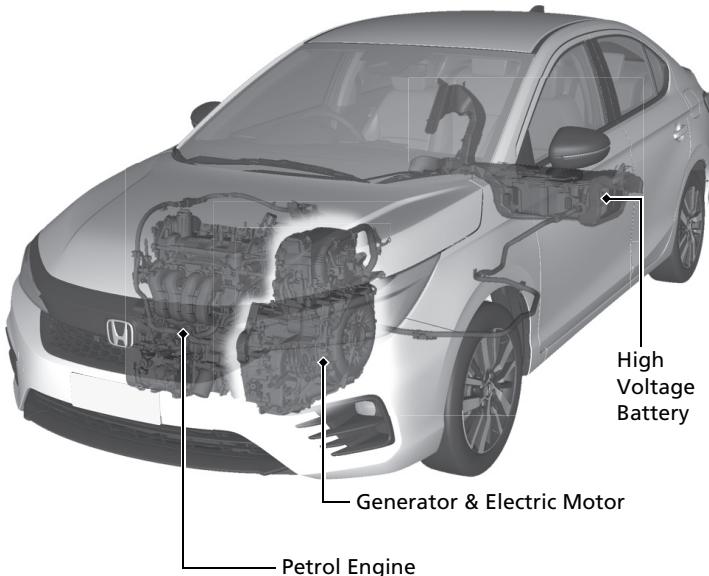
**High Voltage Battery**– Provides electrical storage and serves as a power source for the electric motor.

Learning about the High Voltage battery's characteristics will help you get the best handling and maximise the range of your electric vehicle. ➔ P.242

**High Voltage Battery Charge Level Indicator**– Displays battery state of charge.

When the indicator:

- Displays two or less segments, EV mode is no longer available.
- Displays ten segments, battery charge level is full.

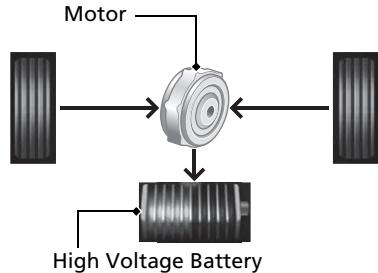




Operating mode	Electric Vehicle (EV)	Hybrid (HV)	Engine (Direct Drive)	Regeneration
Driving state	<p>Stopped or driven at low speeds:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only the electric motor provides propulsion to the wheels.</li> </ul>	<p>Driven in high-load conditions (e.g., when accelerating, going uphill):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Electric Motor provides propulsion to the wheels.</li> <li>The petrol engine drives the generator, supplying electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion or to the High Voltage battery for charging.</li> </ul>	<p>Driven in high-speed, low-load conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The petrol engine provides propulsion to the wheels.</li> <li>The High Voltage battery supplies electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion.</li> <li>The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.</li> </ul>	<p>The accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is decelerating.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.</li> </ul>
Power Flow Monitor				
Electric motor	Stopped/Running	Running	Generating/Running	Regenerating
Generator	Stopped	Generating	No Output	Stopped/No Output
Engine	Stopped	Running	Running	Stopped/No Output
High Voltage battery	Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging

## ● Regenerative Energy and Regenerative Braking

When regenerative braking is in operation



When decelerating without the accelerator being depressed or the brake pedal being applied, or while driving downhill, the electric motor acts as a generator that recovers a portion of the electrical energy that was used to accelerate the vehicle. This regenerative braking slows the vehicle in a manner similar to engine braking in a petrol-powered vehicle.

**Models with paddle selector**

You can control the rate of deceleration by using the deceleration paddle selector.

**Models without paddle selector**

This function is enhanced when the shift lever is moved to **B**.

## ● Auto Engine Stop/Start

Your vehicle's petrol engine automatically stops running during vehicle operation or restarts while the vehicle is stationary when it is appropriate.

In the following cases, however, auto engine stop may not activate.

- The vehicle momentarily needs additional power for aggressive acceleration, or driving uphill or at high speed.
- The climate control system is in heavy use.
- The High Voltage battery temperature is high or low.
- The High Voltage battery is too low on charge.

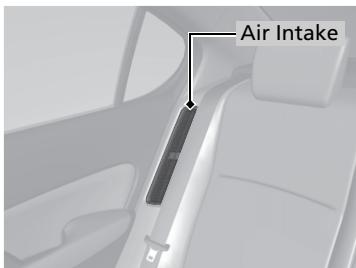
## ● Sounds Unique to the e:HEV

When you first start driving this vehicle, you will likely hear some unfamiliar sounds, particularly when you turn on the power system, or while you are driving or accelerating from a stop. Some of these sounds are unique to this vehicle's powertrain, fuel, and climate control, and High Voltage battery cooling systems; others are similar to sounds generated by conventional automobiles that typically are masked by louder noises absent from a vehicle of this design. These sounds are not a cause for concern, and you will soon recognise them as normal and thus be able to detect any new or unusual noise should one develop.

# Safety Precautions



## Do not cover the air intake



If the air intake is obstructed during vehicle operation, the High Voltage battery can become too hot. To protect the battery, the system may start to limit the battery's output and cause the power system and 12-volt battery charging system indicators to come on.

## Do not touch the High Voltage system

Attempting to take a High Voltage system component apart or disconnect one of its wires can cause severe electrical shock. Make sure that any maintenance or repairs to the High Voltage system is performed by a Honda dealer.

## If a crash occurs

- Be careful of electric shock hazard.
  - If a severe crash damages your vehicle's High Voltage system, there is a possibility of electrical shock due to exposed High Voltage components or wires. If this happens, do not touch any of the High Voltage system components or any of its orange wires.
- Avoid contact with High Voltage battery fluid.
  - The High Voltage battery contains a flammable electrolyte that could leak as a result of a severe crash. Avoid skin or eye contact with the electrolyte as it is corrosive. If you accidentally come into contact with the electrolyte, rinse the exposed skin or flush your eyes with copious amounts of water for at least five minutes, and seek medical attention immediately.
- Use a fire extinguisher for an electrical fire.
  - Attempting to extinguish an electrical fire with even a small quantity of water, from a garden hose for instance, can be dangerous.
- Anytime the vehicle is damaged in a crash, have it repaired by a dealer.

## Emergency Shutdown System for the High Voltage System

If the vehicle is involved in a crash, the emergency shutdown system will activate depending on the severity of the impact. When the system activates, the High Voltage system automatically shuts down, and the vehicle can no longer move under its own power. To return the High Voltage system back to normal operation, consult a dealer.

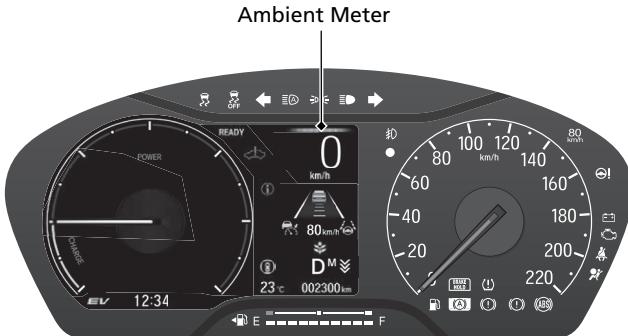
## When the vehicle is disposed

- The High Voltage battery is a Lithium ion battery. Honda collects and recycles used High Voltage batteries – consult with your dealer for proper battery disposal in the event your vehicle is not repairable.

# Eco Assist System

## Ambient Meter\*

- The colour of the ambient meter changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel efficient manner.



## ECON Mode Indicator

P.102

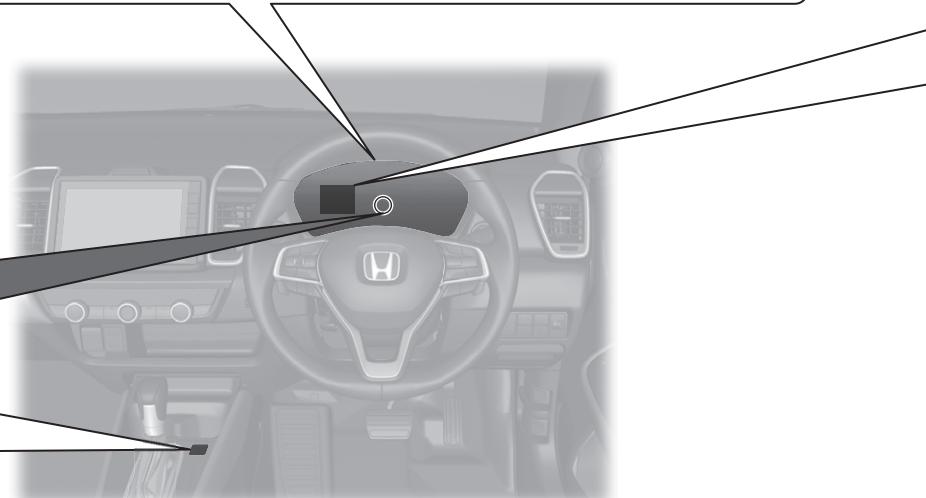
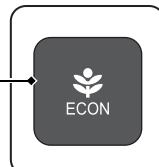
Comes on when the ECON button is pressed.



## ECON Button

P.227

Helps to maximise fuel economy.



## Drive Cycle Score/Lifetime Points

- Comes on when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.



## Eco Drive Display

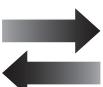
- Keep the vehicle icon near the centre of the circle.

Fuel economy is: Worse



Aggressive Deceleration

Better



Moderate Deceleration

Best



Slow Acceleration/  
Deceleration

Better



Moderate Acceleration

Worse



Aggressive Acceleration

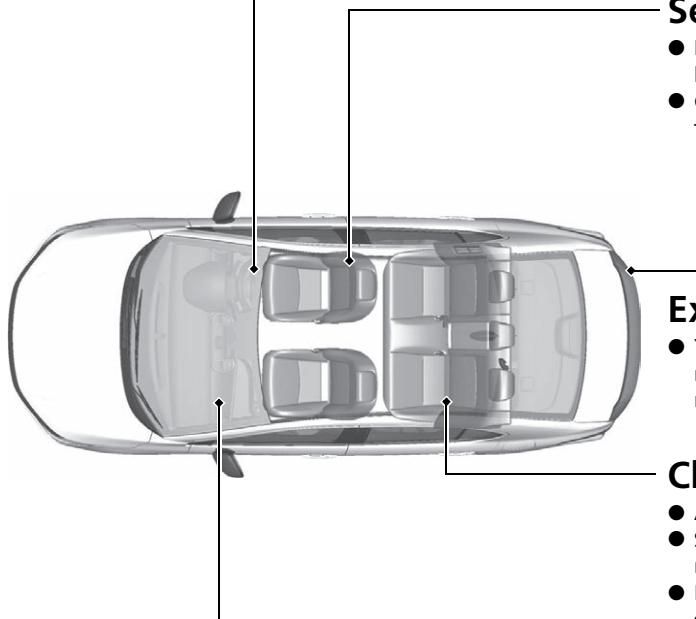
# Safe Driving

P.33

## Before Driving Checklist

P.208

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.



### Seat Belts

P.38

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

### Exhaust Gas Hazard

P.88

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

### Child Safety

P.59

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

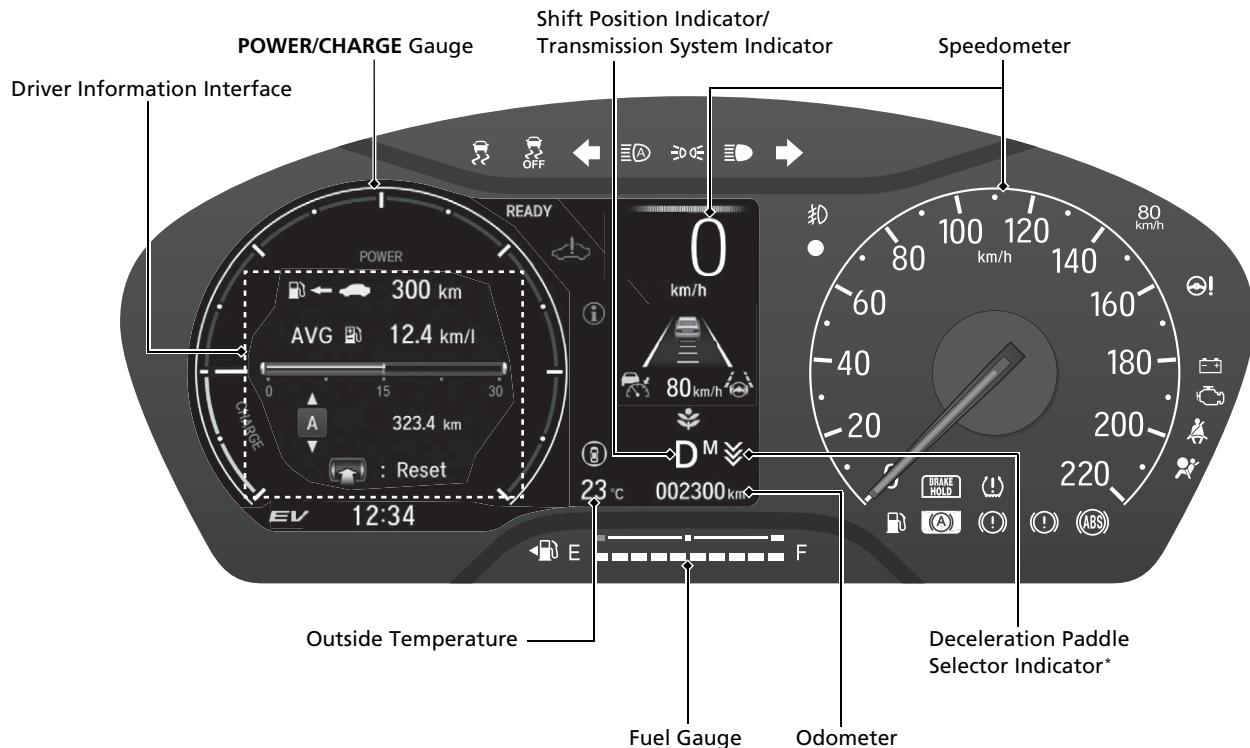
### Airbags

P.49

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

# Instrument Panel ➔ P.91

Gauges ➔ P.109 / Driver Information Interface ➔ P.111 / System Indicators ➔ P.92



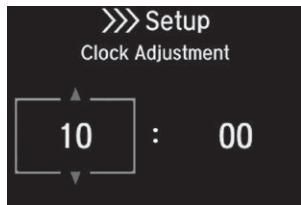
\* Not available on all models

# Controls

P.133

## Clock

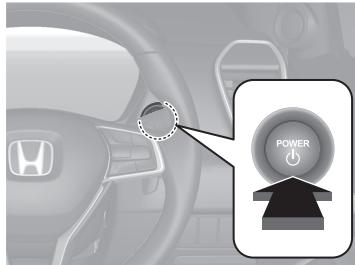
P.134



## POWER Button

P.161

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



## Turn Signals

P.164

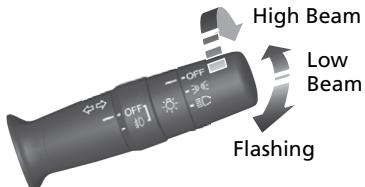
Turn Signal Control Lever



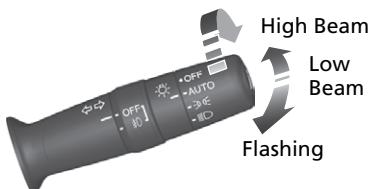
## Lights ➔ P.165

### Light Control Switches

Models without automatic lighting control



Models with automatic lighting control



## Wipers and Washers

➔ P.175

### Wiper/Washer Control Lever

#### MIST

#### OFF

**INT:** Low speed with intermittent

**LO:** Low speed wipe

**HI:** High speed wipe

Pull towards you to spray washer fluid.

#### Adjustment Ring\*

- : Lower speed, fewer sweeps
- +: Higher speed, more sweeps

## Steering Wheel ➔ P.179

- To adjust, push the adjustment lever down, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



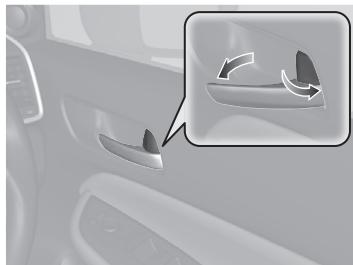
## Unlocking the Front Door from the Inside ➔ P.146

Except African models

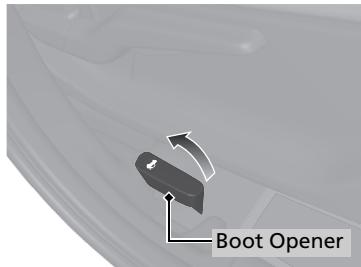
- Pull the driver's door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.

African models

- Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



\* Not available on all models

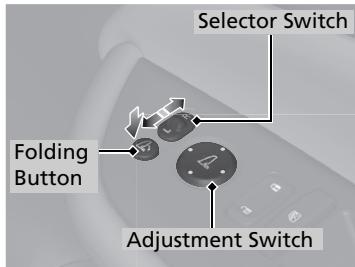
**Boot** ➔ P. 150

- Pull the boot opener on the outside of the driver's seat to unlock and open the boot.
- Press the boot release button on the boot lid to unlock and open the boot.
- Press the boot release button on the remote to unlock and open the boot.

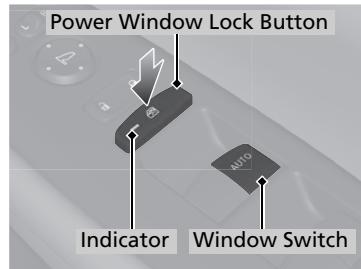
**Power Door Mirrors**

➔ P. 181

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to L or R.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

**Power Windows** ➔ P. 155

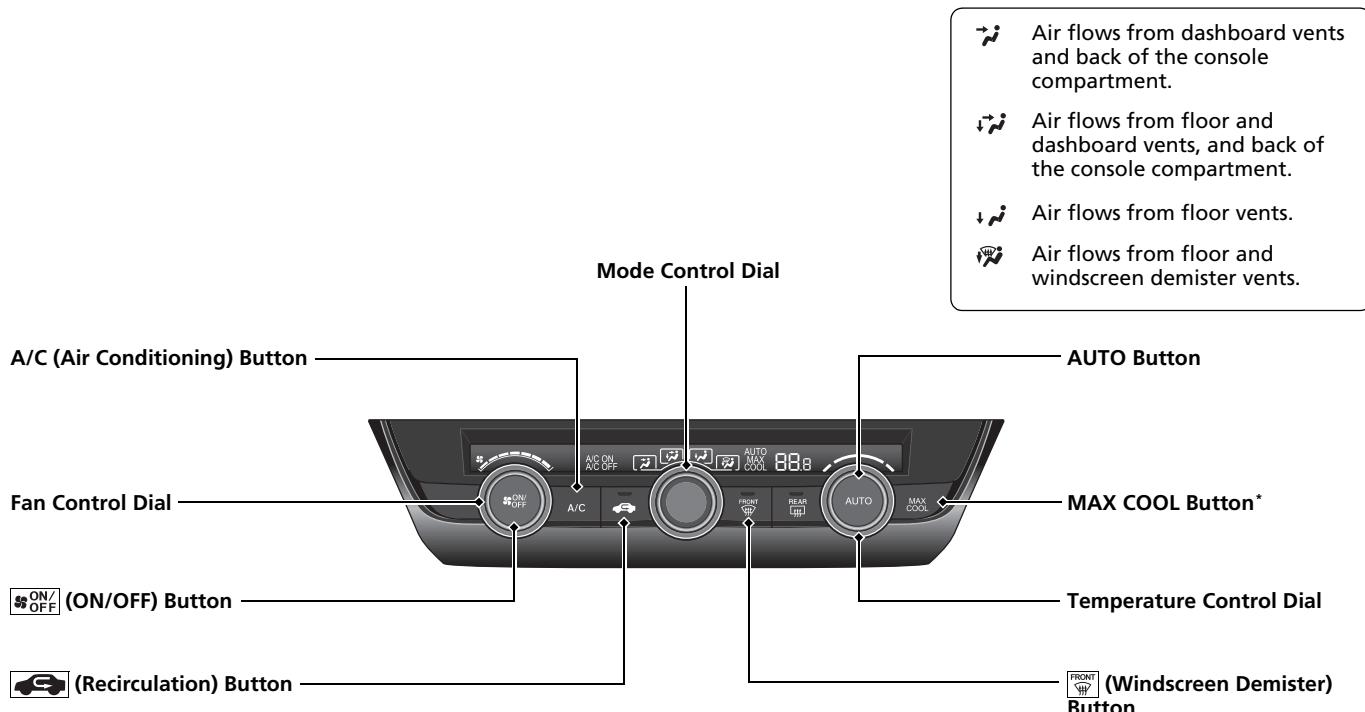
- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.



## Climate Control System

P.200

- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the **ON/OFF** button to turn the system on and off.
- Press the **FRONT** button to defrost the windscreens.



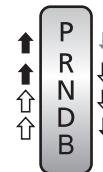
\* Not available on all models

# Driving ➔ P.207

## Transmission ➔ P.221

- Shift to **P** and depress the brake pedal when turning on the power.

### Shift selection



Depress the brake pedal and press the release button to move out of **P**.

Move the shift lever without pressing the release button.

Press the release button to move the shift lever.



#### Park

Used when parking or turning the power on or off.



#### Reverse

Used when reversing.



#### Neutral

Transmission is not locked.



#### Drive

Used:

- For normal driving.

**Models with paddle selector**

- The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.



#### Drive (B)

Used:

- When driving down a long hill and to increase regenerative braking.

**Models with paddle selector**

- The deceleration paddle selector can be used.

## Deceleration Paddle Selector\* P.224

When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through three stages of deceleration.

Pull the  selector for a few seconds when you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector.

- When the shift lever is in **D**

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change temporarily, and the stage will appear in the instrument panel.

- When the shift lever is in **B**

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with **M** will appear in the instrument panel.

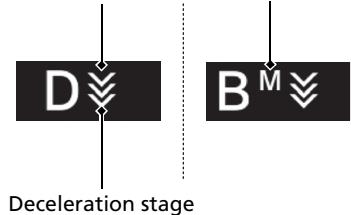


 Paddle Selector



 Paddle Selector

When the shift lever is in **D**, the deceleration stage appears.



When the shift lever is in **B**, the deceleration stage and **M** appear.



## CMBS On and Off ➔ P.250

- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you start the power system.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, use the safety support switch.

## VSA On and Off ➔ P.236

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering, and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you turn on the power system.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

## Cruise Control\* ➔ P.229

- Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.
- To use cruise control, press the **CRUISE** button, then press **SET/-** once you have achieved the desired speed (above 40 km/h).

## Deflation Warning System\* ➔ P.238

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The deflation warning system is turned on automatically every time you turn on the power system.
- An initialisation procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

# Refueling

P. 309

## Fuel recommendation:

Thai models

**Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher**

Except Thai models

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher**

**Fuel tank capacity: 40 L**

- 1 Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the dashboard at the driver's side.



- 2 Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.



- 3 Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.



- 4 After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.

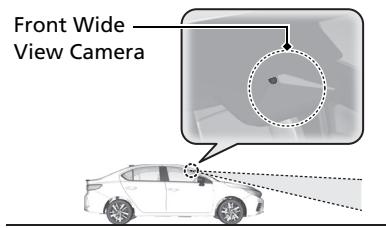


# Honda Sensing\*

►P.243

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of a front wide view camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.

The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.



## Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

►P. 246

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, pedestrians, or riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ►P. 258

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

## Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ►P. 274

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

## Road Departure Mitigation System ►P. 285

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

# Maintenance

P. 313

## Under the Bonnet

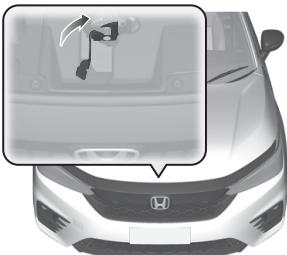
P. 322

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the 12-volt battery condition monthly.

- 1** Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.



- 2** Locate the bonnet latch lever, pull it up, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



- 3** When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

## Wiper Blades

P. 342

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen or become noisy.



## Tyres

P. 344

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.

## Lights

P. 332

- Inspect all lights regularly.

# Handling the Unexpected ➔ P.363

## Flat Tyre ➔ P.365

Models with tyre repair kit

- Park in a safe location and repair the flat tyre using the tyre repair kit.

Models with a compact spare tyre

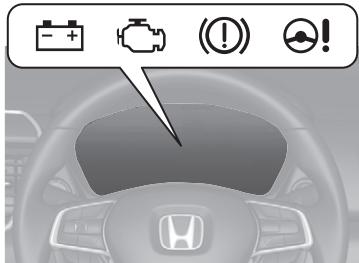
- Park in a safe place and replace the flat tyre with the spare tyre in the boot.



## Indicators Come On

➔ P.399

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



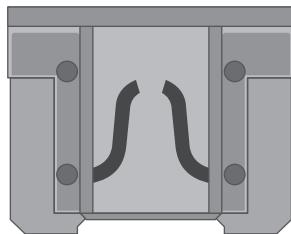
## Power System Won't Start ➔ P.390

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



## Blown Fuse ➔ P.406

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



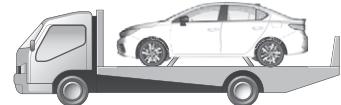
## Overheating ➔ P.397

- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the engine cool down.



## Emergency Towing ➔ P.418

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



# What to Do If



The power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to ACCESSORY. Why?



- The steering wheel may be locked.
- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the POWER button.



The power mode does not change from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Why?



The shift lever should be moved to P.



Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?



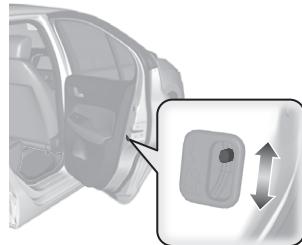
This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

► Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ►P.300

---

**Q** The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

**A** Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.



---

**Q** Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?

**A** If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

---

**Q** Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

**A** The beeper sounds when:

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

---

**Q** Why does a beeper sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?

**A** The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto lock operating range before the door completely closes.

☞ Locking the doors and boot (Walk away auto lock) P. 140



**Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?**



The beeper sounds when the driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.

- Driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.
- The parking brake lever is not fully released.



**Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?**



Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.



Models with deflation warning system

I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?



The Deflation Warning System needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to recalibrate the system.

☞ Deflation Warning System\* P.238

---

**Q** Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?

- A**
- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
  - Check if the transmission is in **P** or **N**. If so, select any other position.
- 

**Q** Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?

- A** The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
-

# Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

## For Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions.....	34
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	36
Safety Checklist .....	37

## Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts.....	38
Fastening a Seat Belt .....	44
Seat Belt Inspection.....	47
Anchorage Points.....	48

## Airbags

Airbag System Components.....	49
Types of Airbags .....	51

Front Airbags (SRS) .....	51
Side Airbags.....	54
Side Curtain Airbags* .....	56
Airbag System Indicators.....	57
Airbag Care .....	58

## Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers .....	59
Safety of Infants and Small Children... ..	63
Safety of Larger Children .....	85

## Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas.....	88
--------------------------	----

## Safety Labels

Label Locations .....	89
-----------------------	----

\* Not available on all models

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

## Important Safety Precautions

### ■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

### ■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

### ■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

### ■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

### Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

### ■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

### ■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

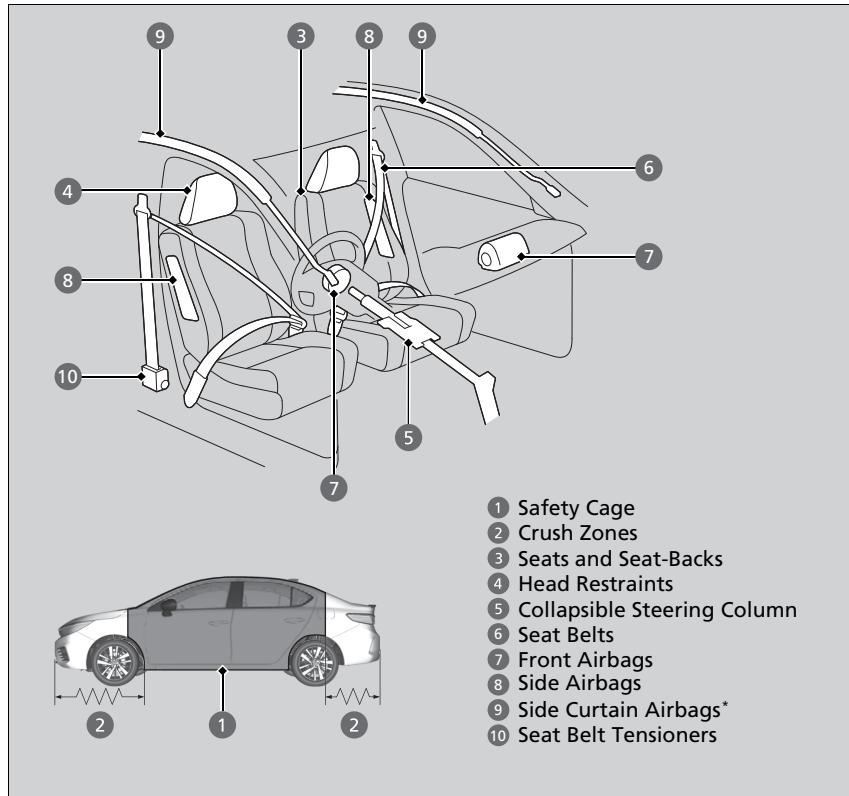
### ■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

### ■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

## Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

### >Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

## Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.

☒ Seats P. 183

- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.

☒ Adjusting the Front Head Restraints P. 186

- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.

☒ Fastening a Seat Belt P. 44

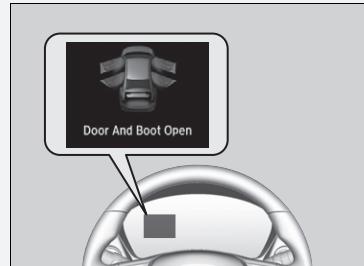
- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height and weight.

☒ Child Safety P. 59

### »Safety Checklist

If the door and/or boot open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the boot is not completely closed. Close all doors and the boot tightly until the message disappears.

☒ Driver Information Interface P. 111



## About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

### About Your Seat Belts

#### **WARNING**

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

**WARNING:** Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

**WARNING:** Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

**WARNING:** Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

**WARNING:** Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

## ■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

### ► **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt P. 82**

## » About Your Seat Belts

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

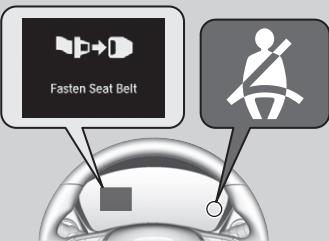
Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

## ■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

## Seat Belt Reminder



### Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.

If you set the power mode to ON before the driver's seat belt is fastened, the indicator will come on. If the driver does not fasten the belt, the indicator will remain on.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

### Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

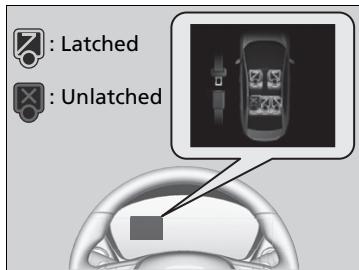
- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor.

Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



### ■ Rear seats\*

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. A driver information interface notifies you if any of the rear seat belts are not used.

The display appears when:

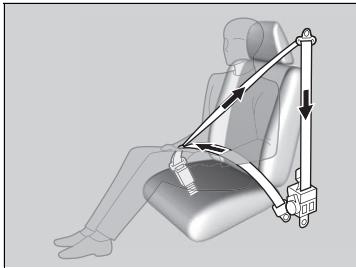
- A rear door is opened and closed.
- Any of the rear passengers fastened or unfastened their seat belt.

The beeper sounds if any rear passenger's seat belt is unlatched while driving.

## ■ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



### » Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

### Models with side curtain airbags

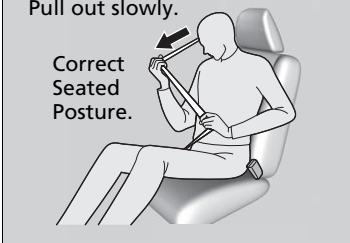
During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

## Fastening a Seat Belt

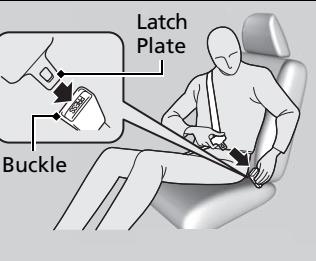
After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

► **Seats** P. 183

Pull out slowly.



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.
  - Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

### ►Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.

Then smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten. If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

► **About Your Seat Belts** P. 38

► **Seat Belt Inspection** P. 47



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

#### »Fastening a Seat Belt

## ⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

## Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips.

Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.



Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

## Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

## Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  - If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

►►Seat Belt Inspection

### WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

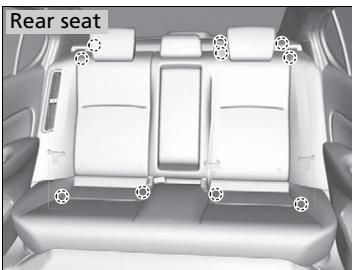
**WARNING:** It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

**WARNING:** Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

## Anchorage Points



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

## Airbag System Components

The front, front side, and side curtain\* airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for the front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.
- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.
- Automatic front seat belt tensioners.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

### Models with side curtain airbags

- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.

\* Not available on all models

## Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

**What you should do:** Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

**Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.**

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

**Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.** Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

## Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

## Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags\***: Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

### Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

**SRS** (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

### Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

### Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

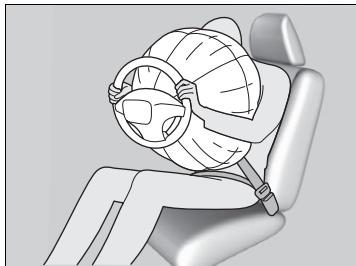
\* Not available on all models

## ■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

## ■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

## ■ When front airbags should not deploy

**Minor frontal crashes:** Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

**Side impacts:** Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags\* have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

**Rear impacts:** Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

**Rollovers:** Seat belts and side curtain airbags\* offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

## ■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

## ■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

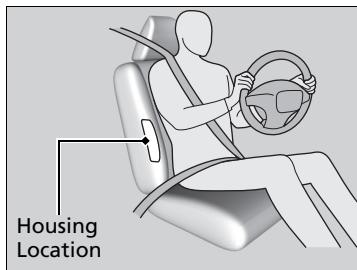
Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

\* Not available on all models

## Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

### Side Airbags

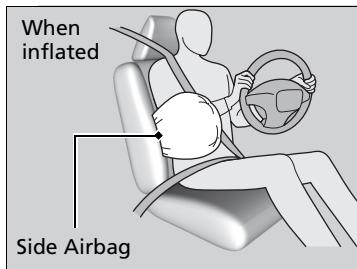
Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.

Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

### Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

### ■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

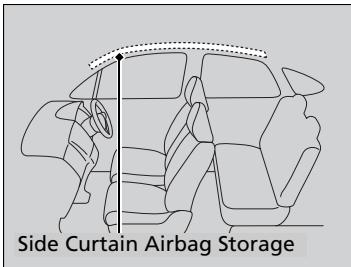
### ■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

## Side Curtain Airbags\*

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

### Side Curtain Airbags\*

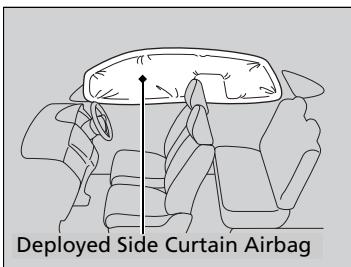
The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

#### Models with coat hook

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

### Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

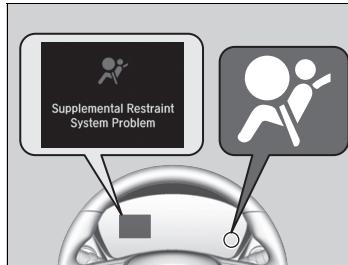
### When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

## Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

### ■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



#### ■ When the power mode is set to ON

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

▶▶Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

### ⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

## Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

### ■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

### ■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

### ■ Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

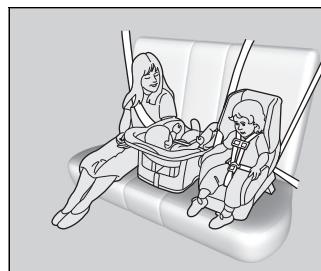
We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

## Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

**Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat.** This is because:



- An inflating front airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

### » Protecting Child Passengers

#### Front Passenger's Sun Visor

## WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.

## ▶Protecting Child Passengers

 **WARNING**

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129\*, or the regulations of the subject countries.

 **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 66

- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

## »Protecting Child Passengers

**Malaysian and African models**

Front Passenger's Doorjamb

**WARNING****Extreme Hazard!**

**DO NOT use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!**

**WARNING:** Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

☞ **Opening/Closing the Power Windows**  
P. 155

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

▶Protecting Child Passengers

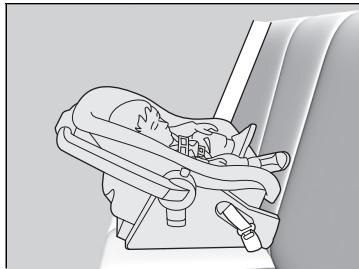
To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning labels on the passenger's side sun visor and door jamb\*. Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

► **Safety Labels** P. 89

## Safety of Infants and Small Children

### ■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.



#### ■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- ▶ We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.  
If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

### ▶ Protecting Infants

#### ⚠ WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

#### » Protecting Infants

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

## ■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



### ■ Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

## » Protecting Smaller Children

### ⚠ WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

## Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector, while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

### ■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129\*, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

### >Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

#### Except African models

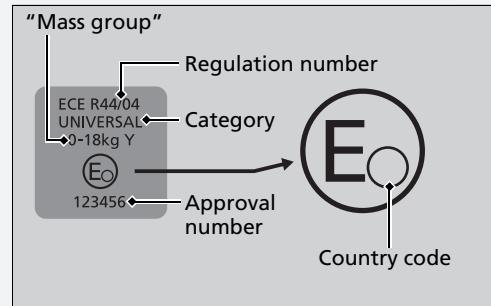
We recommend a rear-facing or a front-facing Honda genuine ISOFIX child restraint system for infants or small children, respectively. Ask your dealer.

## ■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

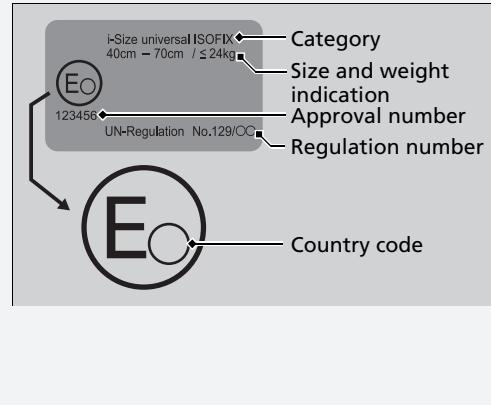
If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size\*/ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

### » Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label\*



\* Not available on all models

**Indian Models****■ ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems**

MASS Group	Size Class	Fixture	Vehicle ISOFIX positions				Recommended Child Restraint Systems <sup>*1</sup>	
			Front passenger	Rear seat				
				L-Side	R-Side	Centre		
Carycot	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X	X		
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X	X		
Group 0 up to 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	IL	X	Honda genuine ISOFIX (Rear facing)	
Group 0+ up to 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	IL	X	Honda genuine ISOFIX (Rear facing)	
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	IL	X	Honda genuine ISOFIX (Rear facing)	
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	IL	X	Honda genuine ISOFIX (Rear facing)	
Group I 9 to 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	IL	X		
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	IL	X		
	B	ISO/F2	X	IUF, IL	IUF, IL	X	IL: Honda genuine ISOFIX (Front facing)	
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IUF, IL	IUF, IL	X	IL: Honda genuine ISOFIX (Front facing)	
	A	ISO/F3	X	IUF, IL	IUF, IL	X	IL: Honda genuine ISOFIX (Front facing)	
Group II 15 to 25 kg			X	X	X	X		
Group III 22 to 36 kg			X	X	X	X		

**■ ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems**

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

ISOFIX Size Class	Fixture (CRF)	Description
G	ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
F	ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
E	ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
D	ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
C	ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
B1	ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
B	ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
A	ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems

- 
- IUF: Suitable for forward-facing ISOFIX child restraints system of universal category approved for use in this mass group.
- IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS), including those listed in the corresponding box in the right column of the table. These ISOFIX CRS are those of the 'specific vehicle', 'restricted' or 'semi-universal' categories.
- X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.
- \*1: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up-to-date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.
-

## ■ Child Restraint Systems to be Installed with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

Not all of the various types of child restraint systems are suitable for use in your vehicle. Before you purchase or use a child restraint system, refer to the following table to ensure that the child restraint system is appropriate for the vehicle, the seating position, and the child's weight (mass group) and size.

### ☒ Child Restraint Systems to be Installed with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

Mass group is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the mass group as indicated in the manufacturer's instructions as well as on the package and labels of the child restraint system.

The particular child restraint systems listed in the table are genuine Honda products. They are available from your dealer.

For correct installation, refer to the instructions manual that came with the child restraint system.

**Indian Models****■ Child Restraint Systems installed with Seat Belt**

MASS Group	Seating position				Recommended Child Restraint Systems* <sup>1</sup>	
	Front passenger seat	Rear seat				
		L-side	R-side	Centre		
Group 0 up to 10 kg	X	U	U	X		
Group 0+ up to 13 kg	X	U	U	X		
Group I 9 kg to 18 kg	UF <sup>*2</sup>	U	U	UF		
Group II 15 kg to 25 kg	UF <sup>*2</sup>	U	U	UF		
Group III 22 kg to 36 kg	UF <sup>*2</sup>	U	U	UF		

U: Suitable for 'universal' category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for forward facing 'universal' category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

L: Suitable for particular child restraint systems given in this list. These restraints may be of the "specific vehicle," "restricted," or "semi-universal" category.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

\*1: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

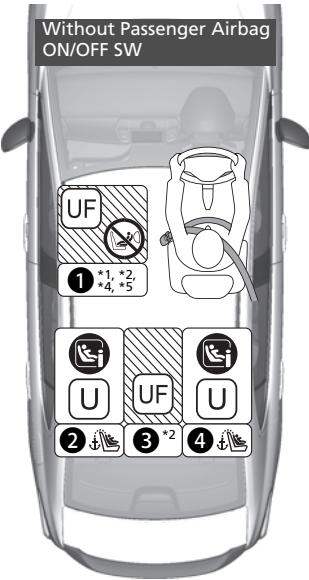
\*2: Move the front seat to its slide rail rearmost position and adjust the front seat-back angle to its most upright position. And if the CRS and headrest interfere, remove the headrest. The removed headrest should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it does not fly during sudden braking or collision.

Also, remove the CRS and if an adult is seated, attach the headrest restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.

**Indian Models**

A size class is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the size class as indicated on the manufacturer's instructions, package, and labels of the child restraint.

For a correct installation, please refer to the Child Restraint Instruction Manual.

**Malaysian models****■ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation**

	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

\*1: Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position and adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

\*2: Forward facing only

\*4: The head restraint must be removed when attaching a forward facing booster seat approved by UN R129. Store the removed head restraint in the luggage compartment so that it does not fly during sudden braking or collision. Also, when the booster seat is removed, attach the head restraint to the original seat again and make sure it is locked.

\*5: If you can not fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchor.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions. However, the centre seat is excluded.

Seat position number	Size groups Weight Stature		Seating position				
			1	2	3	4	
			Front passenger <sup>*1, *5</sup>	2nd row			
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10 kg	No	Yes	No	Yes	
	Group 0+	Up to 13 kg		Yes <sup>*2</sup>	Yes	Yes <sup>*2</sup>	
	Group I	9-18 kg	Yes <sup>*2</sup>			Yes	
	Group II	15-25 kg				Yes	
	Group III	22-36 kg					
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	$\leq 150$ cm		No	Yes	No	Yes	
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS <sup>*3</sup>	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	Yes	No	Yes	
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No	
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10 kg	No	R3	No	R3	
	Group 0+	Up to 13 kg					
	Group I	9-18 kg					
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18 kg	No	F3	No	F3	
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	$\leq 150$ cm		B3 <sup>*4</sup>	B3	B3	B3	

- \*1: Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position and adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
- \*2: Forward facing only
- \*3: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.
- \*4: The head restraint must be removed when attaching a forward facing booster seat approved by UN R129. Store the removed head restraint in the luggage compartment so that it does not fly during sudden braking or collision. Also, when the booster seat is removed, attach the head restraint to the original seat again and make sure it is locked.
- \*5: If you can not fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchor.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions. However, the centre seat is excluded.

#### ▶ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

**■ Malaysian Genuine CRS List****R44**

Mass Group	Child Restraint System	Category
Group 0 up to 10 kg	—	—
Group 0+ up to 13 kg	—	—
Group I 9 to 18 kg	—	—
Group II, III 15 to 36 kg	—	—

**R129**

Range of application	Child Restraint System	Category
40 to 83 cm up to 13 kg (Birth - 15 months)	Honda Baby & Kids i-size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX (Rear facing)
76 to 105 cm 8 to 22 kg (15 months - 4 years)	Honda Baby & Kids i-size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX

## ■ Indian Genuine CRS List

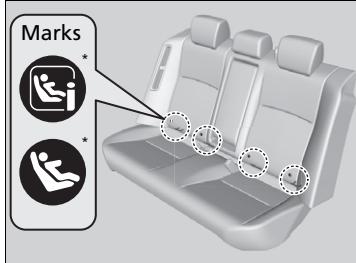
R44

Mass Group	Child Restraint System	Category
Group 0 up to 10 kg	Honda genuine ISOFIX	Semi-universal ISOFIX (Rear facing)
Group 0+ up to 13 kg	Honda genuine ISOFIX	Semi-universal ISOFIX (Rear facing)
Group I 9 to 18 kg	Honda genuine ISOFIX	Semi-universal ISOFIX (Front facing)
Group II, III 15 to 36 kg	—	—

*Continued*

## ■ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



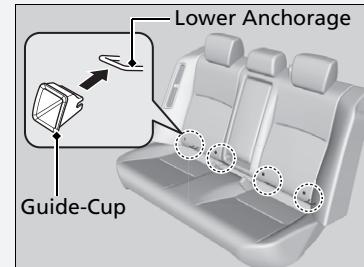
1. Locate the lower anchorages under the marks.

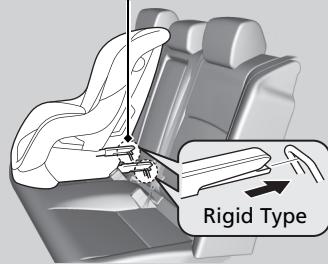
## ▶Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

### ⚠️ WARNING

Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchorage. In a collision, one anchorage may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.



**Lower Anchorages**

- 2.** Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

► When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

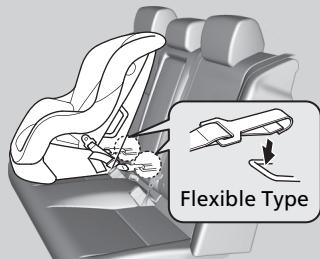
**▶ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System**

**WARNING:** Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether Anchorage Symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle.

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

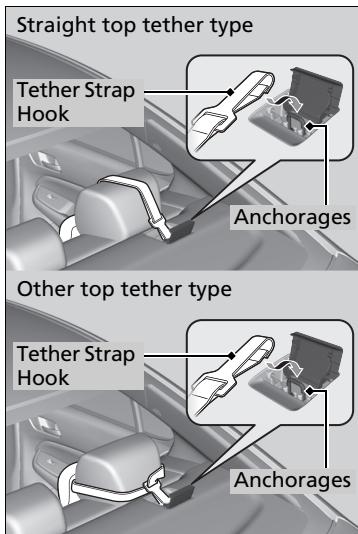
The flexible type may not be available in your country.

**Flexible Type****Child restraint system with tether strap**

- 3.** Open the tether anchorage cover behind the head restraint.

**Top Tether Anchorage Symbol**

*Continued*

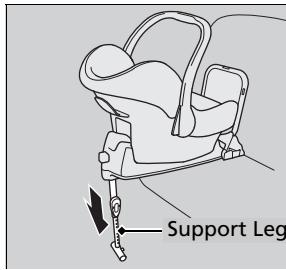
**4. Straight top tether type**

Route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint and secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.

**Other top tether type**

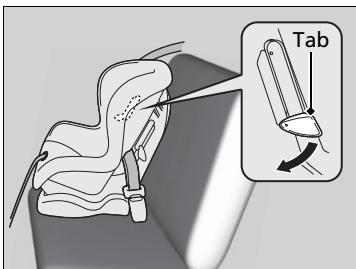
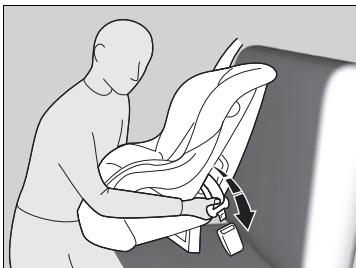
Route the tether strap around the head restraint and secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.

5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

**Child restraint system with support leg**

- 3.** Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- ▶ Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support.
  - ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

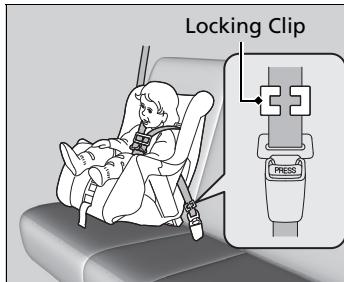
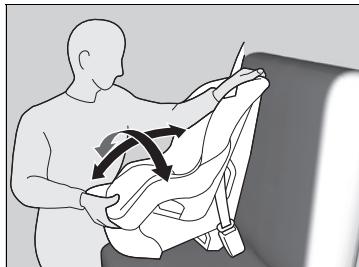
## ■ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



1. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
  - Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.
3. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
4. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
  - When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
5. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
  - When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

## ■ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.



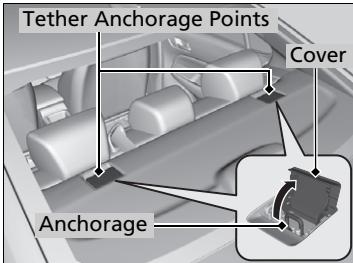
6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

3. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
4. Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
5. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 6 and 7.

## ■ Adding Security with a Tether



A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear outer seating position.

If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

1. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point and lift the cover.

### 2. Straight top tether type

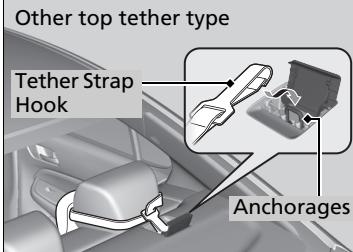
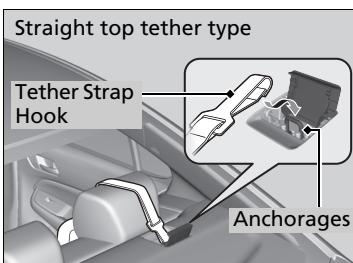
Route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint. Make sure the strap is not twisted.

#### Other top tether type

Route the tether strap around the head restraint. Make sure the strap is not twisted.

3. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.

4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.



## ■ Adding Security with a Tether

**WARNING:** Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system whether using the seat belt or lower anchorages.

# Safety of Larger Children

## ■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

## ■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



### ■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

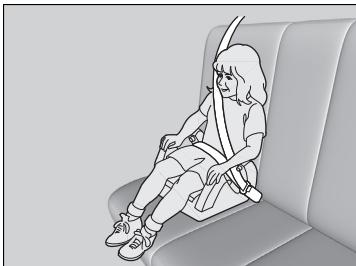
## » Safety of Larger Children

### ⚠ WARNING

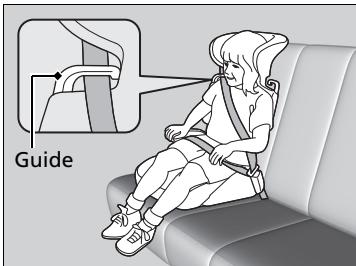
Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

## ■ Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

## ■ Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

## ■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

## ■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

## Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

### ■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the boot open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the boot open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

### ☒ Carbon Monoxide Gas

## ⚠ WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

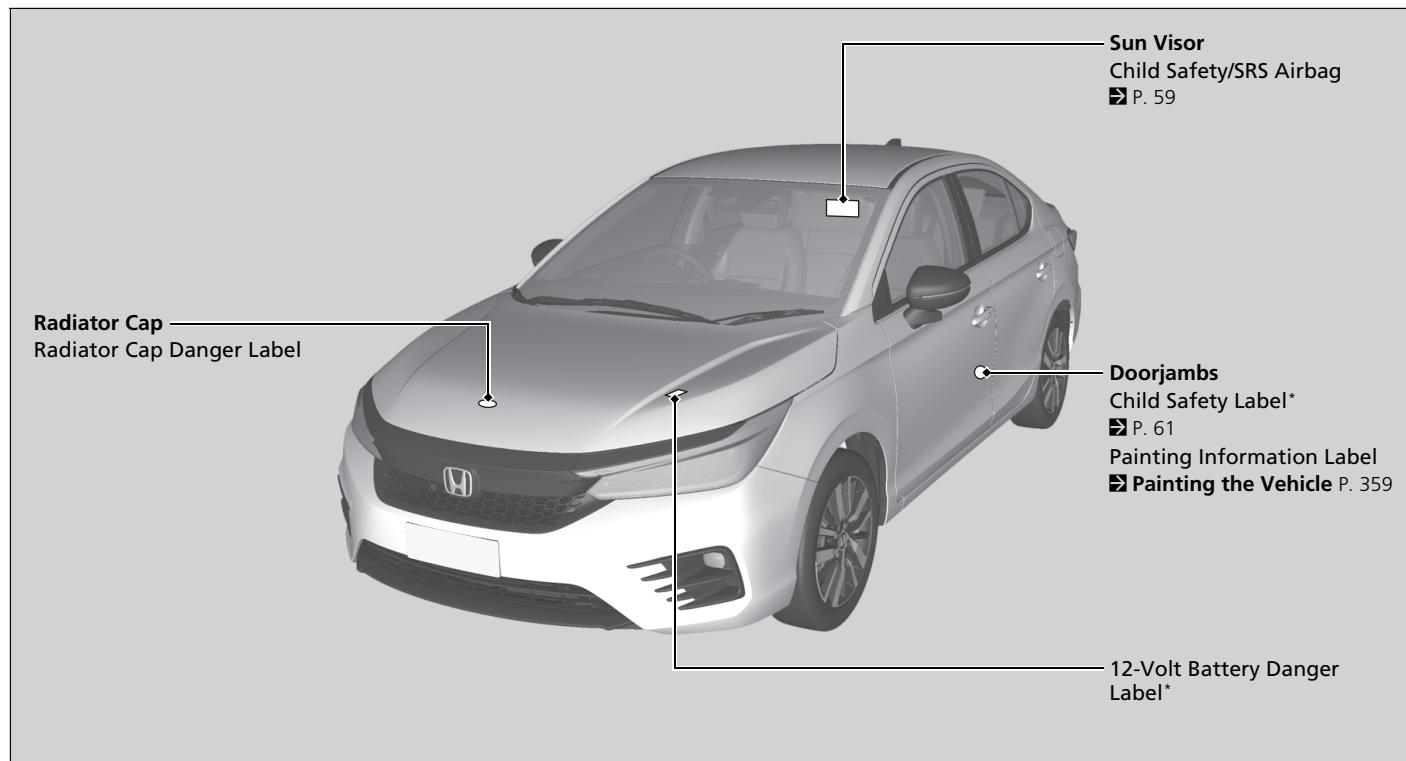
An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.

Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

## Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



\* Not available on all models



# Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.



<b>Indicators .....</b>	92
<b>Gauges and Driver Information Interface .....</b>	109
Gauges.....	109
Driver Information Interface .....	111

Indicators come on/blink depending on the condition of the vehicle. Messages may display on the driver information interface at the same time. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as contacting a dealer.

 *1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	→ P. 94
 *1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 96
 *1	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	→ P. 96
 *1	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	→ P. 96
 *1	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	→ P. 97
 *1	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	→ P. 97
	Transmission System Indicator	→ P. 97
	Shift Position Indicator	→ P. 97
	Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator*	→ P. 98
	*1 Power System Indicator	→ P. 98
	READY Indicator	→ P. 98
	*1 EV Indicator	→ P. 98
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	→ P. 99
	Low Fuel Indicator	→ P. 99
 *1	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	→ P. 99
 *1	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	→ P. 100
 *1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	→ P. 100
 *1	VSA OFF Indicator	→ P. 100
 *1	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	→ P. 101
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	→ P. 101

\*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

	High-Beam Indicator	→ P. 101
	Lights On Indicator	→ P. 101
	Fog Light Indicator*	→ P. 101
	Auto High-Beam Indicator*	→ P. 101
	ECON Mode Indicator	→ P. 102
	CRUISE MAIN Indicator*	→ P. 102
	CRUISE CONTROL Indicator*	→ P. 102
	* <sup>1</sup> Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator*	→ P. 103
	* <sup>1</sup> Speed Alarm Indicator*	→ P. 104
	System Message Indicator	→ P. 104
	Immobilizer System Indicator	→ P. 102
	Security System Alarm Indicator	→ P. 102
	* <sup>1</sup> Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (Amber)*	→ P. 105
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (White/Green)*	→ P. 105
	* <sup>1</sup> Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)*	→ P. 105
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)*	→ P. 106
	* <sup>1</sup> Safety Support Indicator (Amber)*	→ P. 106
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Gray)*	→ P. 108

\*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released.</li> <li>Comes on for about 30 seconds when you apply the electric parking brake while the power mode is in ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then goes off.</li> <li>Stays on for about 30 seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF while the electric parking brake is applied, then goes off.</li> </ul>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Make sure the parking brake is released. Stop in a safe place and check the brake fluid level.</li> </ul> <p><b>☞ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving P. 402</b></p>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on along with the ABS indicator -</b> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  <b>► If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On</b> P. 402             </li> <li><b>Comes on along with the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber) -</b> Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do.  <b>► If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on</b> P. 403             </li> <li><b>Blinks and the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber) comes on at the same time -</b> There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.  <b>► If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on</b> P. 403             </li> </ul>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the cooperative control with regenerative braking, the electric servo brake system, or the hill start assist system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Avoid high speeds and sudden braking. Take the vehicle to a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system and/or the automatic brake hold system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>
	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.</li> </ul>	 <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 298
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.</li> </ul>	 <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 298

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.</li> <li>Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.</li> </ul>	<p>► If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks P. 401</p>
	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the 12-volt battery is not charging.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> </ul> <p>► If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On P. 400</p>
	Transmission System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks while driving</b> - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> <li><b>Do Not Drive displays on the driver information interface</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.</li> </ul>
	Shift Position Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicates the current shift position.</li> </ul>	<p>► Shifting P. 221</p>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the paddle selector is pulled.</li> <li>• Blanks when deceleration does not occur while pulling the paddle selector.</li> <li>• Comes on with <b>M</b> when shift lever in <b>B</b> and pulling the paddle selector.</li> </ul>	<b>☞ Deceleration Paddle Selector*</b> P. 224
	Power System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the electric vehicle system.</li> <li>• Comes on when the High Voltage battery temperature becomes high.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>• <b>Stop Driving When Safe displays on the driver information interface</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.</li> </ul>
	<b>READY</b> Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the vehicle is ready to drive.</li> </ul>	<b>☞ Turning on the Power</b> P. 212
	<b>EV</b> Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the vehicle is moved by the motor, and the engine is not operating.</li> </ul>	—

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON.</li> <li>If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later.</li> <li>Blinks while driving if you and/or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.</li> </ul> <p><b>Malaysian and Trinidad models</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a while when the rear seat belt is unfastened while the power mode to on, and a red icon is displayed on the driver information interface.</li> <li>Blinks and the beeper sounds when the rear seat belt is unfastened while driving.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts.</li> <li><b>Stays on after you and/or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt(s)</b> - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul> <p>☞ <b>Seat Belt Reminder</b> P. 41</p>
	Low Fuel Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 5.3 Litres left).</li> <li>Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on</b> - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.</li> <li><b>Blinks</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	Anti-lock Brake System ( <b>ABS</b> ) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function.</li> </ul> <p>☞ <b>Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)</b> P. 300</p>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Supplemental restraint system</li> <li>- Side airbag system</li> <li>- Side curtain airbag system*</li> <li>- Seat belt tensioner</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when VSA is active.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system, brake assist system, hill start assist system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>—</li> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  <b>☞ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System P. 235</b></li> </ul>
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you partially disable VSA.</li> <li>Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>• <b>☞ VSA On and Off P. 236</b></li> <li>• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li><b>Do Not Drive displays on the driver information interface</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.  <b>► If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 404</li> </ul>
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever.</li> <li>Blink along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blink along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Does not blink or blinks rapidly</b>  <b>► Replacing Light Bulbs</b> P. 334, 334, 335</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>► Emergency Stop Signal</b> P. 302</li> </ul>
	High-Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.</li> </ul>	—
	Lights On Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the position, tail, and other external lights are on.</li> </ul>	<b>► Light Switches</b> P. 165
	Fog Light Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the fog lights are on.</li> </ul>	<b>► Fog Lights*</b> P. 168
	Auto High-Beam Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met.</li> </ul>	<b>► Auto High-Beam*</b> P. 170

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Immobilizer System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks</b> - You cannot start the power system. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again.</li> <li><b>Repeatedly blinks</b> - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.</li> </ul>
	Security System Alarm Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.</li> </ul>	 <b>Security System Alarm</b> P. 153
	ECON Mode Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the ECON mode is on.</li> </ul>	 <b>ECON Mode</b> P. 227
	<b>CRUISE MAIN</b> Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>CRUISE</b> button.</li> </ul>	 <b>Cruise Control*</b> P. 229
	<b>CRUISE CONTROL</b> Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if you have set a speed for cruise control.</li> </ul>	 <b>Cruise Control*</b> P. 229

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the initialise process is not yet complete.</li> <li>Comes on and stays on when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low.</li> <li>The system has not been initialised.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system, or when a compact spare tyre is temporarily installed.</li> <li>Comes on if the deflation warning system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary.</li> <li><b>Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures</b> - The system needs to be initialised.  <b>Deflation Warning System Initialisation</b>  P. 240 </li> <li><b>Blinks and remains on</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare tyre, get your regular tyre repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.</li> <li>Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Speed Alarm Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when your vehicle speed exceeds 80 km/h. A reminder tone sounds about every two minutes.</li> <li>Blinks when your vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h. A reminder tone sounds continuously.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This indicator keeps illuminating while your vehicle speed is faster than 80 km/h.</li> <li>This indicator keeps blinking while your vehicle speed is faster than 120 km/h.</li> </ul>
	System Message Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>While the indicator is on, press the  (home) button, and select <b>Information</b> to see the message again.  <b>☞ Switching the Display P. 111</b></li> <li>Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Respond to the message accordingly.</li> <li>The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the left selector wheel is pressed.</li> </ul>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with ACC.</li> <li>Comes on if the ACC is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> <li>Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.</li> <li>ACC has been automatically cancelled.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ☞ <b>Load Limit</b> P. 210</li> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (White/Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lights up in white when you press the  button.</li> <li>Lights up in green when you press the <b>RES/+</b> button or <b>SET/-</b> button.</li> </ul>	☞ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</b> P. 258
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.</li> <li>Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ☞ <b>Load Limit</b> P. 210</li> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lights up in white when you press the LKAS button.</li> <li>• Lights up in green when the LKAS is in operation.</li> </ul>	<p> <b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b> P. 274</p>
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation system or CMBS.</li> <li>• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight.  <b>Load Limit</b> P. 210</li> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected and then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation system and/or CMBS shuts itself off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ☒ <b>Front Wide View Camera</b> P. 292</li> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera. ☒ <b>Front Wide View Camera</b> P. 292</li> <li>It may come on when the ambient conditions are dark, such as when driving in a tunnel, or at night, dawn, or dusk.</li> </ul>

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Gray)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Lights up in green when the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are on.</li><li>• Lights up in green and gray when the Road Departure Mitigation system or CMBS is off.</li><li>• Lights up in gray when the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are off.</li></ul>	<p>☞ <b>Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off</b> P. 288</p> <p>☞ <b>CMBS On and Off</b> P. 250</p>

## Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, fuel gauge, and other related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

### ■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

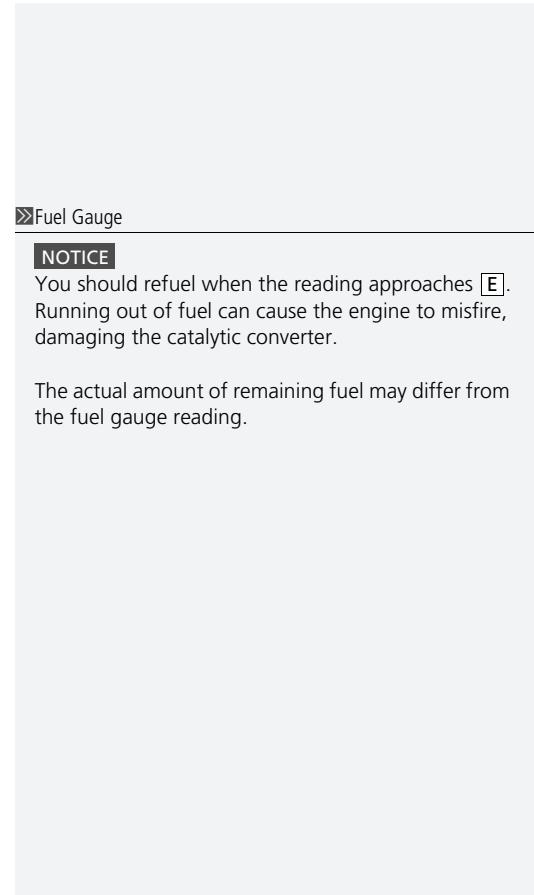
### ■ POWER/CHARGE Gauge

#### ■ Electric motor

The degree to which the electric motor is being powered is displayed by the readings on the **POWER** side.

#### ■ Battery charge in progress

The degree to which the High Voltage battery is being charged is displayed by the readings on the **CHARGE** side.



## Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you set the power mode to ON, the **Outside Temperature Low** message appears on the driver information interface.

### ■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to  $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$  if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

## Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilised.

You can adjust the temperature reading.

☞ **Settings** P. 123

## Clock

Shows the clock.

You can adjust the time manually or change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock on the driver information interface.

☞ **Settings** P. 123

## Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

## Current Mode for ACC and the LKAS\*

Shows the current mode for ACC and LKAS.

☞ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)** P. 258

☞ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 274

## Driver Information Interface

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer and have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the **Engine Oil Pressure Low** or **Engine Temperature Too Hot** message is displayed.

- ☒ If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears P. 399
- ☒ Overheating P. 397

### Switching the Display

Press the  (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

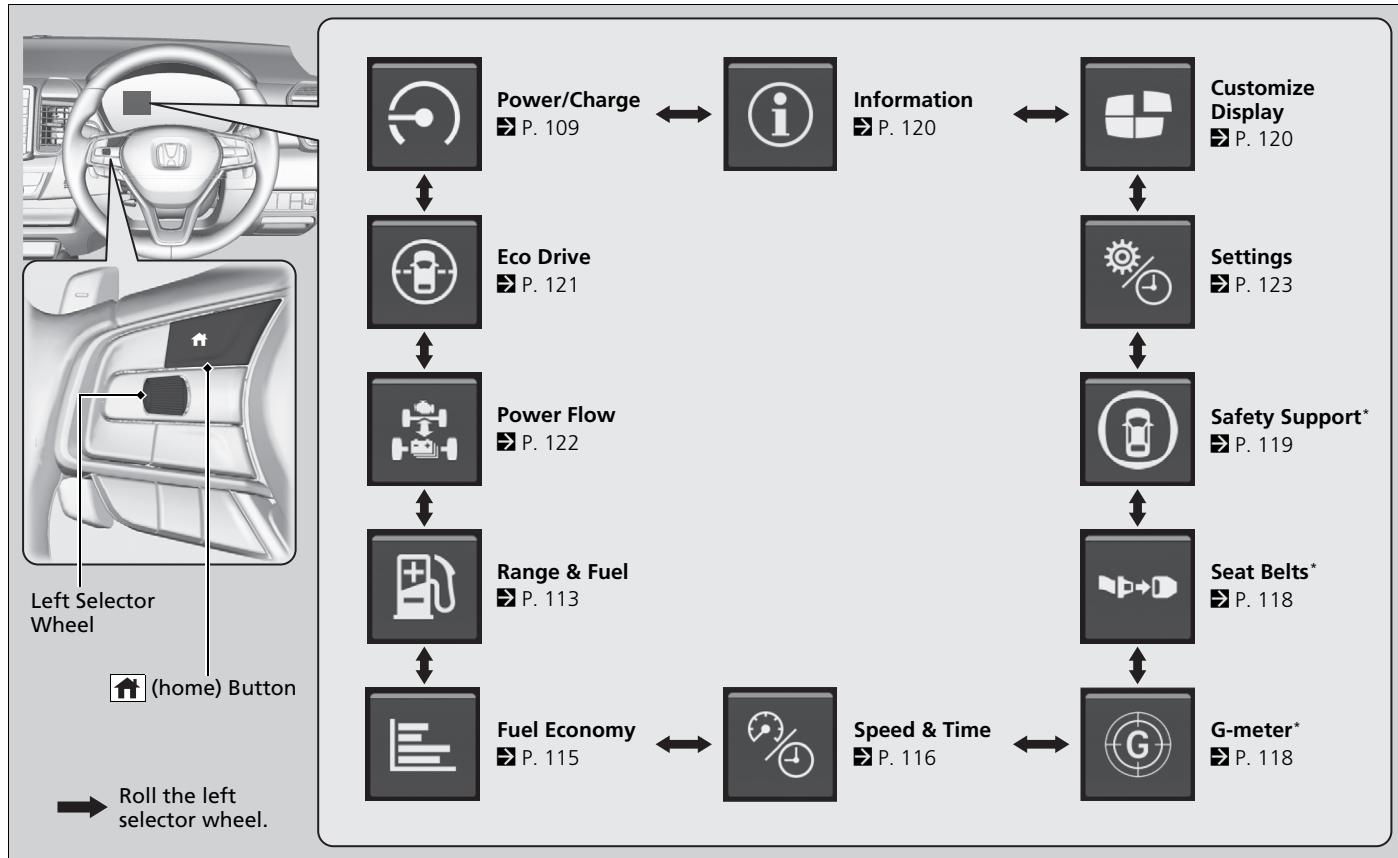
#### »»Switching the Display

To go back to the home screen, press the  (home) button.

You can add or delete the meter contents.

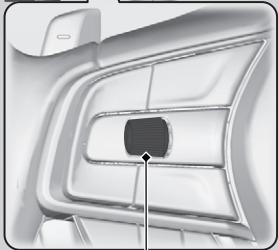
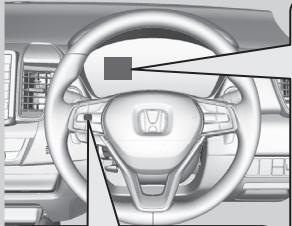
- ☒ Customize Display P. 120

## Instrument Panel



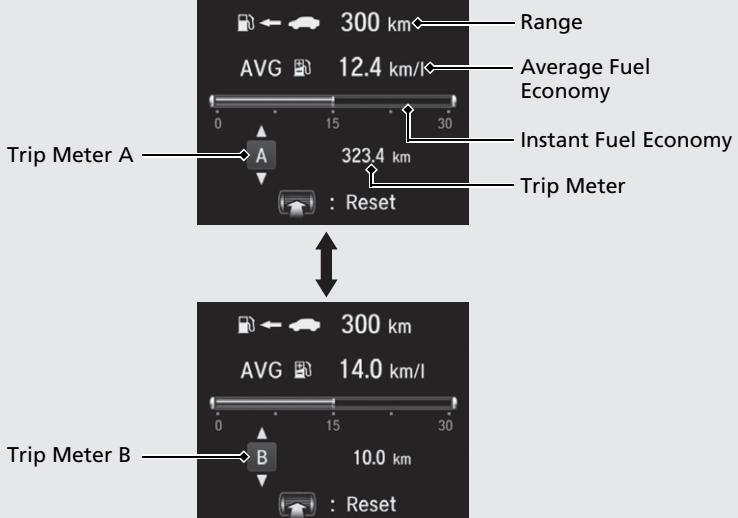
## Range/Fuel/Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



Left Selector Wheel

→ Roll the left selector wheel.



## ■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

### Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel and then select **Reset**.

- The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

## ■ Average fuel economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l\* or l/100 km\*. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

## ■ Instant fuel economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l\* or l/100 km\*.

## ■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power and fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

## ■ Trip meter

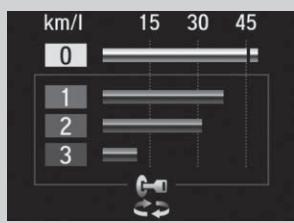
Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by rolling the left selector wheel.

## ■ Average fuel economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

- **Settings** P. 123

## Fuel Economy



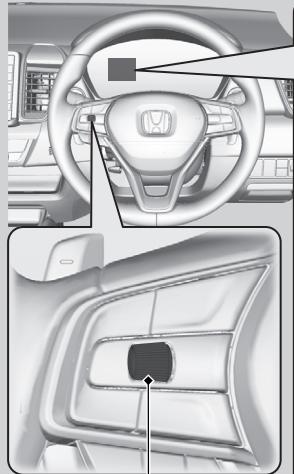
Shows the average fuel economy for the last three driving cycles (1-3), and the current driving cycle (0) in km/l\* or l/100 km\*.

Each time you set the power mode to ON, the display is updated, and the oldest record is deleted.

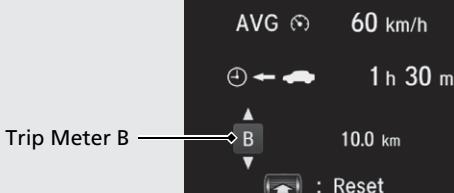
\* Not available on all models

## Speed & Time

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



Left Selector Wheel  
→ Roll the left selector wheel.



**■ Trip meter**

☞ **Trip meter** P. 114

**■ Elapsed Time**

Shows the time elapsed since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

**■ Average Speed**

Shows the average speed in km/h since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

## »Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

☞ **Settings** P. 123

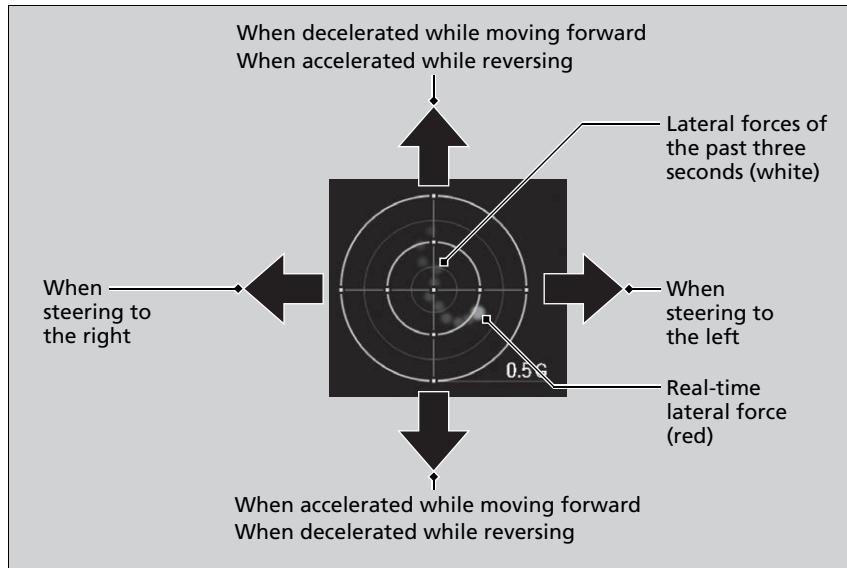
## »Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

☞ **Settings** P. 123

**G-meter\***

Displays the strength (G) and direction of the load that is applied to the vehicle during driving.

**G-meter\***

The meter does not display a lateral force larger than 0.5 G.

**Seat Belts\***

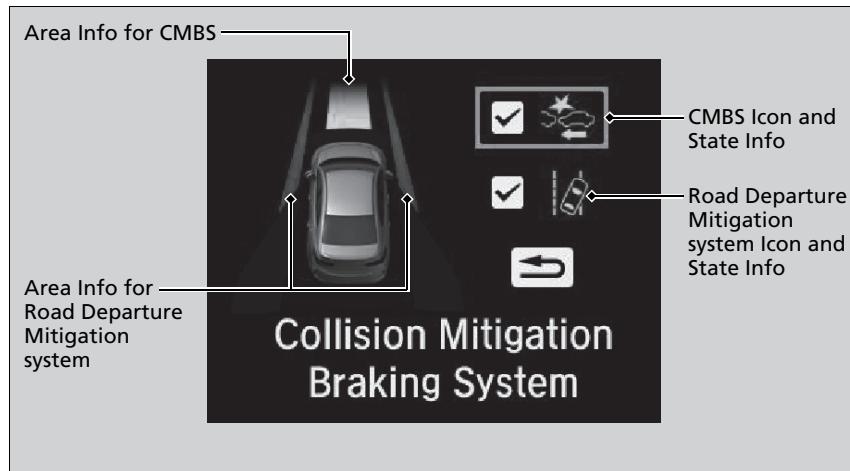
Appears when any of the seat belts are latched or unlatched.

## Safety Support\*

Indicates the state of the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the state of any of the above mentioned systems:

- Green: The system is on.
- Gray: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.



### » Safety Support\*

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn on or off each system, first rotate the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display you can select which system to turn on or off.

- ☒ **Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off** P. 288
- ☒ **CMBS On and Off** P. 250

You can also confirm the state of the each function by the colour of the safety support indicator.

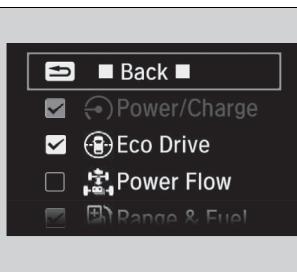
- ☒ **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)\*** P. 106
- ☒ **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Gray)\***  
P. 108

## ■ Customize Display

Change the settings to your liking.

### ■ Arrange content

You can choose which icons to display on the home screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Customize Display**, then press the left selector wheel.
2. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Hide/Show**, then press the left selector wheel.
3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between icons, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

## ▶Customize Display

Icons that are gray cannot be removed from the home screen.

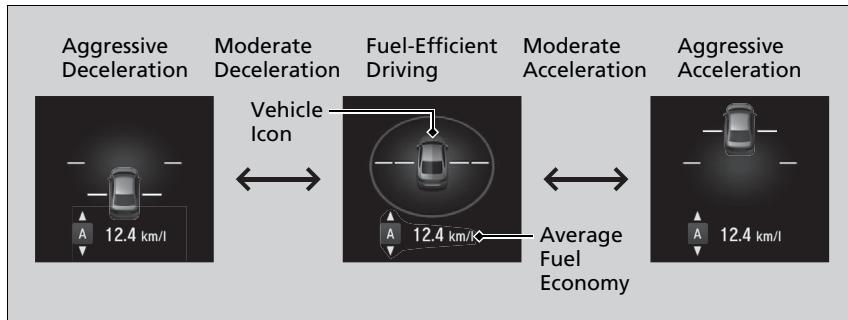
## ▶Information

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

If there are multiple warnings or informations, you can roll the left selector wheel to see other warnings.

## Eco Drive Display

The vehicle icon on the display moves forward or backward while driving. The more aggressive the acceleration is, the further the icon moves forward. The more aggressive the deceleration is, the further the icon moves backward. Keep the icon near the centre of the circle for better fuel economy while driving.



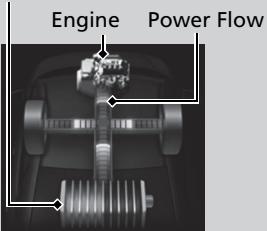
### Eco Drive Display

Switch between the average fuel economy A and average fuel economy B by rolling the left selector wheel.

## ■ Power Flow/Engine Status Display/High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

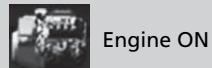
Displays the power flow of the motor and engine, indicating the vehicle's power source and whether the battery is being charged.

High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge



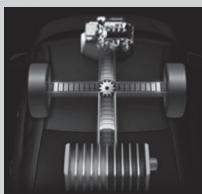
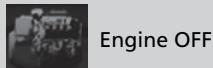
**Hybrid (HV)**

Power is supplied by the motor and the engine.



**Electric Vehicle (EV)**

Power is supplied by the motor.



**Engine (Direct Drive)**

Power is being supplied to charge the High Voltage battery and supply power to the wheels.



**Regeneration**

The motor is charging the High Voltage battery.



Power is being supplied by only the engine.



The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.

## ■ Power Flow/Engine Status Display/High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

The high voltage battery charge level may decrease under the following conditions:

- When the 12-volt battery has been replaced.
- When the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.
- When the high voltage battery control system corrects its reading.

The charge level reading will be corrected automatically while driving.

Changes in the temperature of the high voltage battery can increase or decrease the battery's charging capacity. If temperature changes cause the battery's capacity to change, the number of indicators in the battery charge level gauge may also change, even if the amount of charge remains the same.

While the vehicle is stationary with the engine running, the following may appear on the driver information interface.

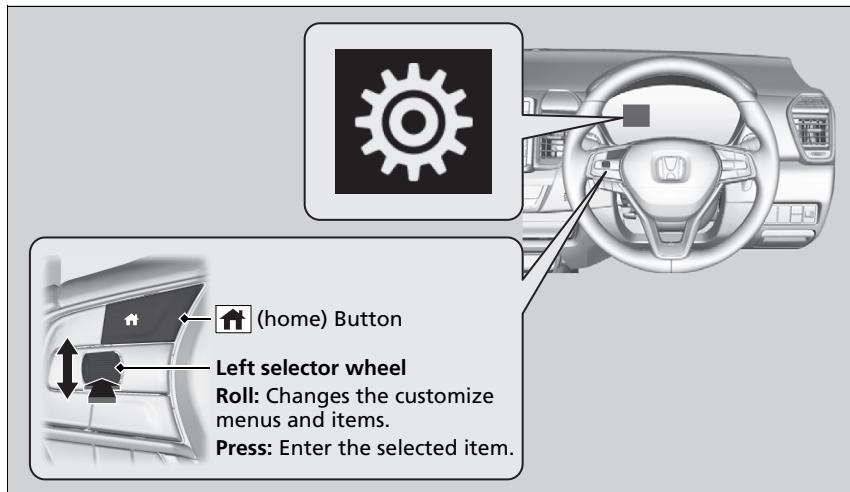


## Settings

Use the driver information interface to customize certain features.

### How to customize

Select the  screen by pressing the  (home) button and rolling the left selector wheel while the power mode is in ON, and the vehicle is at a complete stop. Press the left selector wheel.



### Settings

To customize other features, roll the left selector wheel.

- ⇒ **List of customizable options** P. 124
- ⇒ **Example of customization settings** P. 129

When you customize settings, shift to .

## ■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Deflation Warning System*</b>	—	Initialises the deflation warning system.	<b>Initialise/Cancel</b>
<b>Clock Setup</b>	<b>Clock Adjustment</b>	Adjusts the time. ☞ <b>Adjusting the Clock</b> P. 134	—
	<b>Clock Display</b>	Sets time display 24 hour, 12 hour or off.	<b>24h/12h<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
<b>Driver Assist System Setup*</b>	<b>Preceding Vehicle Proximity Warning Distance</b>	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts.	<b>Far/Normal<sup>*1</sup>/Near</b>
	<b>ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep</b>	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of ACC range.	<b>ON/OFF<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>Road Departure Mitigation Setting</b>	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	<b>Early/Normal<sup>*1</sup>/Delayed/Warning Only</b>
	<b>Lane Keep Assist Beep</b>	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	<b>ON/OFF<sup>*1</sup></b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Meter Setup</b>	<b>Adjust Outside Temp. Display</b>	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	-3°C ~ ±0°C <sup>*1</sup> ~ +3°C
	<b>"Trip A" Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	<b>When Fully Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned OFF/Manual Reset<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>"Trip B" Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	<b>When Fully Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned OFF/Manual Reset<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>Alarm Volume Control</b>	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	<b>Max/Mid<sup>*1</sup>/Min</b>
	<b>Fuel Efficiency Backlight*</b>	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless Access Setup	<b>Door Unlock Mode*</b>	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	<b>Driver Door Only*<sup>1</sup>/All Doors</b>
	<b>Keyless Access Beep Volume</b>	Changes the beep tone that sounds when you have a keyless remote and grab a front door handle.	<b>High<sup>1</sup>/Low</b>
	<b>Keyless Access Beep</b>	Sets the beeper sound or not when you grab either front door handle.	<b>ON<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>
	<b>Remote Start System ON/OFF</b>	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	<b>ON<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>
Lighting Setup	<b>Auto High-Beam*</b>	Turns the auto high-beam on and off.	<b>ON<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>
	<b>Interior Light Dimmer Duration</b>	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	<b>60sec/30sec<sup>1</sup>/15sec</b>
	<b>Headlight Auto OFF Timer</b>	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	<b>60sec/30sec/15sec<sup>1</sup>/0sec</b>
	<b>Instrument Illumination Sensitivity*</b>	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in the <b>AUTO</b> position.	<b>Max/High/Mid<sup>1</sup>/Low/Min</b>
	<b>Headlight Integration With Wipers*</b>	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the <b>AUTO</b> position.	<b>ON<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Door Setup</b>	<b>Auto Door Lock</b>	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically lock.	<b>With Vehicle Speed<sup>*1</sup>/Shift From P/OFF</b>
	<b>Auto Door Unlock</b>	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically unlock.	<b>Except African models Shift To P<sup>*1</sup>/IGN OFF/OFF</b> <b>African models Driver Door With Shift To P<sup>*1</sup>/Driver Door With IGN OFF/All Doors With Shift To P/All Doors With IGN OFF/OFF</b>
	<b>Key And Remote Unlock Mode*</b>	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first operation of the remote.	<b>Driver Door Only<sup>*1</sup>/All Doors</b>
	<b>Walk Away Lock</b>	Changes the settings for the automatic locking the doors when you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote.	<b>ON/OFF<sup>*1</sup></b>

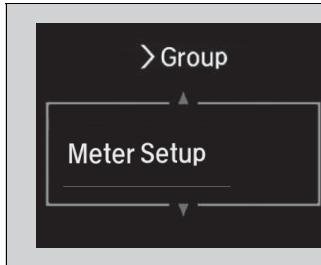
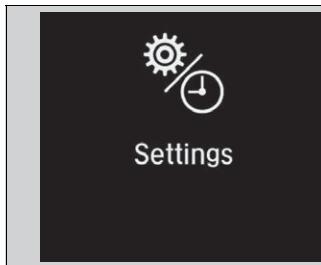
\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Door Setup</b>	<b>Keyless Lock Notification</b>	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
	<b>Security Relock Timer</b>	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	<b>90sec/60sec/30sec<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>Auto Folding Door Mirror*</b>	Changes how you can fold the door mirrors.	<b>Auto Fold With Keyless<sup>*1</sup>/Manual Only</b>
<b>Default All</b>	—	Cancels customized changes you have made or restores them to their default setting.	<b>Cancel/OK</b>

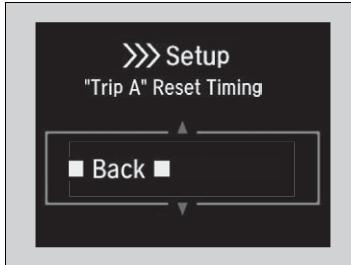
\*1:Default Setting

## ■ Example of customization settings

The steps for changing the “Trip A” Reset Timing setting to When Fully Refueled are shown below. The default setting for “Trip A” Reset Timing is Manual Reset.



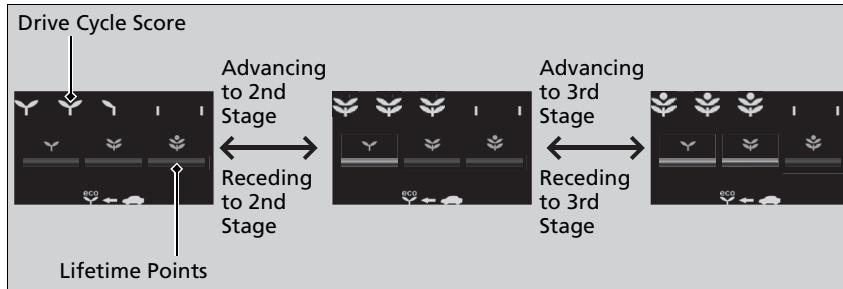
1. Press the (home) button and roll the left selector wheel to select , then press the left selector wheel.
2. Roll the left selector wheel until **Meter Setup** appears on the display.
3. Press the left selector wheel.  
▶ **Adjust Outside Temp. Display** appears first on the display.



4. Roll the left selector wheel until "**Trip A**" **Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.
  - The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When Fully Refueled**, **When Ignition Is Turned OFF**, **Manual Reset**, or **Back**.
5. Roll the left selector wheel and select **When Fully Refueled**, then press the left selector wheel.
  - The display will return to the customization menu screen.
6. Roll the left selector wheel until **Back** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.
7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

## ■ Drive Cycle Score/Lifetime Points

Appear for a few seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Each has three stages. Depending on your driving style, the leaf icon(s) and the gauge increase or decrease to indicate that you have reached a different stage of fuel economy.



### ■ Resetting the Drive Cycle Score

1. Make sure the shift position is in **P**. Turn the power mode to ON.
2. If ECON mode is on, press the **ECON** button to turn it off.
3. Turn the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
4. Turn the power mode to ON again.
  - Make sure to complete steps from 4 through 6 within 30 seconds.
5. Depress the brake pedal twice.
6. Press the **ECON** button twice.
  - The colour of the ambient meter\* will turn to monochrome.
7. Turn the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

\* Not available on all models



# Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

<b>Clock</b> .....	134
<b>Locking and Unlocking the Doors</b>	
Key .....	136
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside .....	138
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside .....	145
Childproof Door Locks .....	148
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking .....	149
<b>Opening and Closing the Boot</b> .....	150
<b>Security System</b>	
Immobilizer System .....	153
Security System Alarm.....	153

<b>Windows</b> .....	155
<b>Sunroof*</b> .....	159
<b>Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel</b>	
POWER Button.....	161
Turn Signals.....	164
Light Switches.....	165
Fog Lights* .....	168
Headlight Adjuster* .....	169
Auto High-Beam * .....	170
Daytime Running Lights .....	174
Wipers and Washers .....	175
Brightness Control .....	177

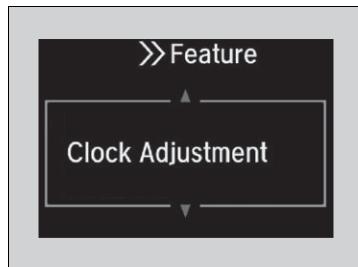
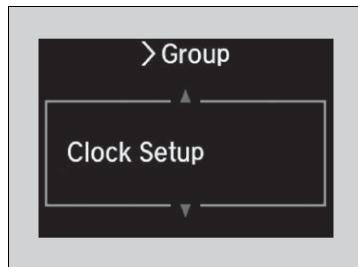
Rear Demister Button.....	178
Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	179
<b>Mirrors</b>	
Interior Rearview Mirror .....	180
Power Door Mirrors .....	181
<b>Seats</b>	
Front Seats .....	183
Armrest .....	190
<b>Interior Convenience Items</b> .....	191
<b>Climate Control System</b>	
Using Automatic Climate Control ....	200
Automatic Climate Control Sensors... .	203

\* Not available on all models

## Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the power mode in ON.

### Adjusting the Time

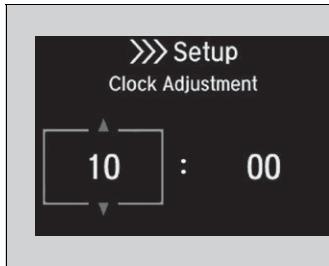


1. Select the **Settings** screen.  
⇒ **Settings** P. 123
2. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Clock Setup**, then push the left selector wheel.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until **Clock Adjustment** appears on the display.
4. Push the left selector wheel.

### Adjusting the Clock

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

⇒ **Settings** P. 123



5. Roll the left selector wheel to change hour, then push the left selector wheel.
6. Roll the left selector wheel to change minute, then push the left selector wheel.
7. Press the  button to return to the normal screen.

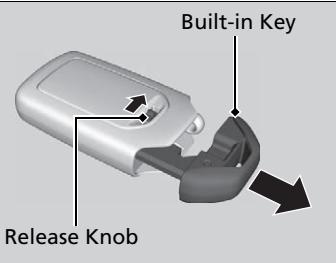
## Key

This vehicle comes with the following keys:



Use the key to turn on and off the power system, and to lock and unlock all the doors and to open the boot.

### Built-in Key



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

### Key

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

#### ► Immobilizer System P. 153

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the power system may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

You can remotely turn the power system on using the remote engine start.

#### ► Remote Engine Start P. 214

## ■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

### »Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.  
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot activate the power system, contact a dealer.

## Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote when locking/unlocking the doors, opening the boot, or to activate the power system.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors or opening the boot or activating the power system may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

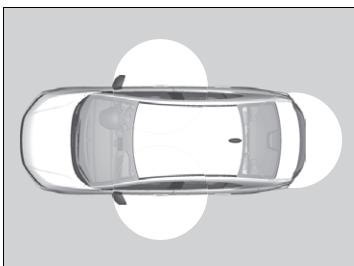
### »Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use. The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

It is possible to reduce battery consumption by turning off radio wave reception. When you hold down the lock and unlock buttons at the same time for approximately three seconds, the LED will blink twice and radio wave reception will turn off. If you press any button on the keyless remote once, it will begin receiving radio waves again.

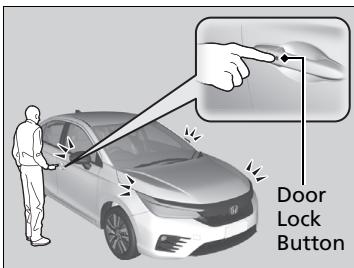
## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

### Using the Keyless Access System



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and open the boot.

You can lock/unlock the doors or open the boot within a radius of about 80 cm of the outside door handle.



#### Locking the doors

Press the door lock button on the front door.

- Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all the doors and the boot lock; and the security system sets.

### Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors relocked with the remote: The light goes off immediately.

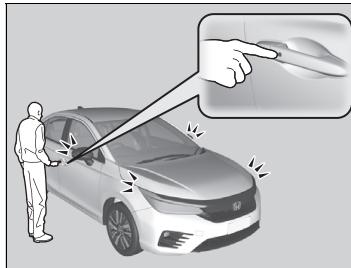
**Interior Lights** P. 191

### Using the Keyless Access System

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle, the doors will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a carwash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.



## ■ Unlocking the doors

### Except African models

Grab the front door handle.

- ▶ All the doors and the boot unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

### African models

Grab the driver's door handle:

- ▶ The driver's door unlocks.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Grab the front passenger's door handle:

- ▶ All doors unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Press the boot release button:

- ▶ The boot unlocks and opens.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds.

**☞ Using the Boot Release Button P. 151**



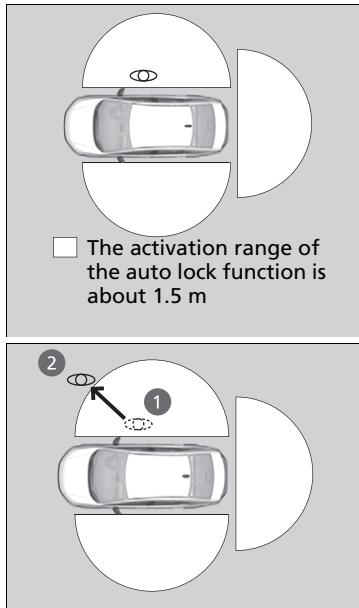
## » Using the Keyless Access System

- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

The light flash, beep and door unlock mode\* settings can be customized using the driver information interface.

**☞ Settings P. 123**

\* Not available on all models



## ■ Locking the doors and boot (Walk away auto lock)

When you walk away from the vehicle with all doors closed while carrying the keyless remote, the doors will automatically lock. The auto lock function activates when all doors are closed, and the keyless remote is within about 1.5 m radius of the outside door handle.

Exit vehicle while carrying keyless remote and close door(s).

- 1.** While within about 1.5 m radius of the vehicle.
  - The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.
- 2.** Carry the keyless remote beyond about 1.5 m from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
  - Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors will then lock.

## ▶Locking the doors and boot (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the driver information interface.

If you set the auto lock function to ON using the driver information interface, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

### ► Settings P. 123

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless remote will continue to flash until the doors are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be cancelled.

Under the following circumstances, the auto lock function will not activate:

- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
  - The beeper will not sound.
- The keyless remote is taken out of its operational range before all the doors are closed.
  - The beeper will sound.

To temporarily deactivate the function:

1. Set the power mode to OFF.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:  
Lock→Unlock→Lock→Unlock.  
► The beeper sounds and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function (any step below):

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- With the keyless remote on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

#### »Locking the doors and boot (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

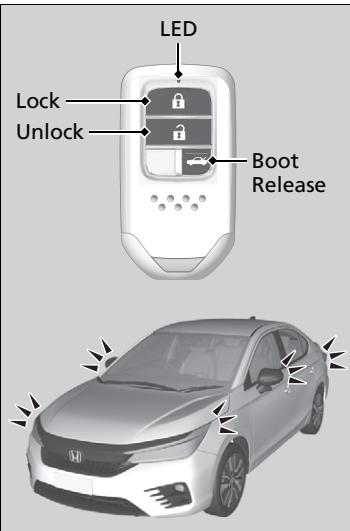
- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door or the bonnet is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless remote is not located within a radius of about 1.5 m from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors.

#### Auto lock function operation stop beeper

After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The keyless remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
  - You are located too close to the vehicle.
  - The keyless remote is put inside the boot.
- If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

## Using the Remote Transmitter



### Locking the doors

Press the lock button.

**Once:**

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors lock, and the security system sets.

**Twice (within five seconds after the first push):**

- ▶ The beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

### Unlocking the doors

**Except African models**

Press the unlock button.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and all doors unlock.

**African models**

Press the unlock button.

**Once:**

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver's door unlocks.

**Twice:**

- ▶ The remaining doors unlock.

## Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors will automatically relock.

You can change the relock timer setting.

▶ **Settings** P. 123

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low. Replace the button battery as soon as possible when this occurs.

If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

▶ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 352

## Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the keyless remote does not work, use the key instead.



Fully insert the key and turn it.

### ▶▶Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

#### Except African models

When you lock/unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

#### African models

When you lock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors lock at the same time.

When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first.

Turning the key a second time within a few seconds does not unlock the remaining doors.

#### Except Latin American models

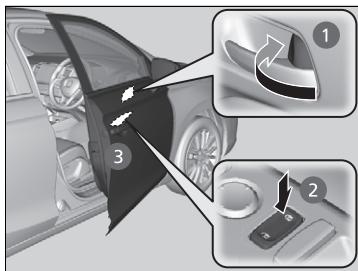
If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

➡ **Settings** P. 123

## ■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



### ■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ②, then pull and hold the outside door handle ③. Close the door, then release the handle.

### ■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

### ■ Lockout prevention system

The doors cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

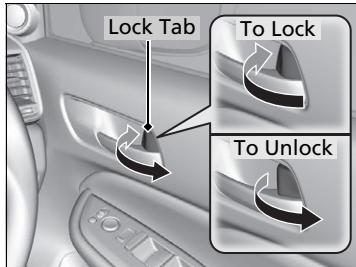
## ▶Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

### Using the Lock Tab



#### ■ Locking a door

Push the lock tab forward.

#### ■ Unlocking a door

Pull the lock tab rearward.

### Using the Lock Tab

#### Except African models

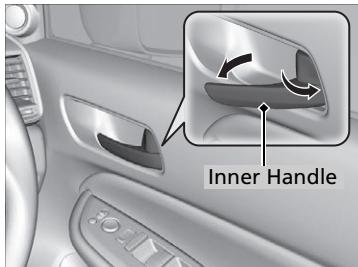
When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

#### African models

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors lock at the same time.

When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

## ■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



### Except African models

Pull the driver's door inner handle.

- ▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

### African models

Pull the front door inner handle.

- ▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

## ▶Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

### Except African models

The driver's door inner handle are designed to allow the driver to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that the driver never pull the door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

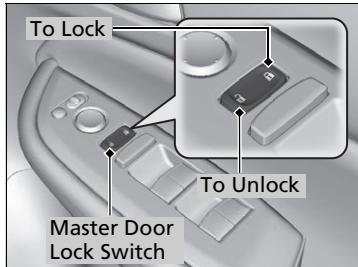
### African models

The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

- ⇒ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 148

## Using the Master Door Lock Switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all doors.

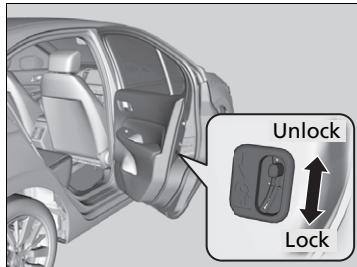
### Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

## Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

### ■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

### ■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

### Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

## Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Your vehicle locks all doors or unlocks all doors\*/the driver's door\* automatically when a certain condition is met.

### Auto Door Locking

#### Drive lock mode

All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

### Auto Door Unlocking

#### Park unlock mode

Except African models

All doors unlock when the transmission is put into **P** with the brake pedal depressed.

African models

The driver's door unlocks when the transmission is put into **P** with the brake pedal depressed.

#### Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the driver information interface.

☞ **Settings** P. 123

\* Not available on all models

## Precautions for Opening/Closing the Boot

### ■ Opening the boot

Open the boot all the way.

- ▶ If it is not fully opened, the boot lid may begin to close under its own weight.

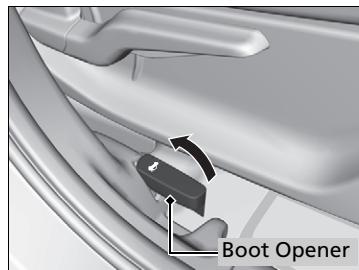
### ■ Closing the boot

Keep the boot lid closed while driving to:

- ▶ Avoid possible damage.
- ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

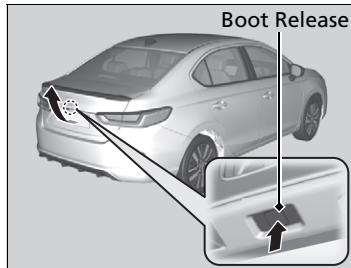
☞ **Exhaust Gas Hazard** P. 88

## Using the Boot Opener



Pulling the boot opener on the outside of the driver's seat unlocks and opens the boot.

## Using the Boot Release Button



Push up the release button on the boot lid after the doors are unlocked.

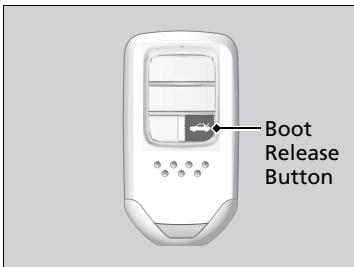
Even if the boot is locked, you can open the boot if you carry the keyless remote.

► Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds once.

### »Using the Boot Release Button

- If you forget the remote inside, the beeper will sound and the boot will not close.
- A person who is not carrying the keyless remote can unlock the boot if a person who is carrying it is within range.
- If the beeper sounds after you close the boot, move the keyless remote away from the boot and close again.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the boot.

## Using the Remote Transmitter



Press the boot release button for approximately one second to unlock and open the boot.

### Using the Remote Transmitter

If the driver's door is locked, the boot will automatically lock when you close it. Otherwise, you will have to lock it manually.

## Immobilizer System

This system prevents a key that has not been preregistered from starting the power system.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **POWER** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **POWER** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **POWER** button.

Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic device, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

## Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the boot, bonnet or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the boot or doors are opened with the key\*, remote transmitter or keyless access system.

### ■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and some exterior lights flash.

### » Immobilizer System

#### NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

### » Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.

The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the key\*, remote transmitter or keyless access system, or set the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

## ■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors are locked from outside with the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

## ■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

## ■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the key\*, remote transmitter or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

## ■ Security System Alarm

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the boot with the boot opener.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release.

If the 12-volt battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced.

If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key\*, remote transmitter or keyless access system.

### Except Latin American models

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

## Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all of the windows. The power window lock button on the driver side must be switched off (indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

### » Opening/Closing the Power Windows

#### **WARNING**

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

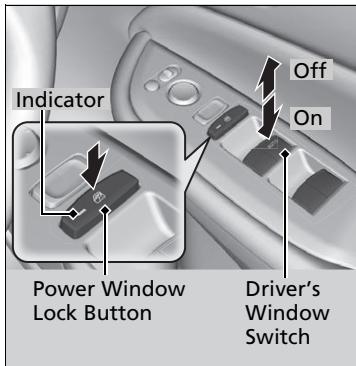
Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

#### **Models with power window auto-open/close function except driver's window**

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Closing driver's door cancels this function.

## ■ Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



### ■ Manual operation

**To open:** Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

### ■ Automatic operation

**To open:** Push the switch down firmly.

**To close:** Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

## ▶Opening/Closing the Power Windows

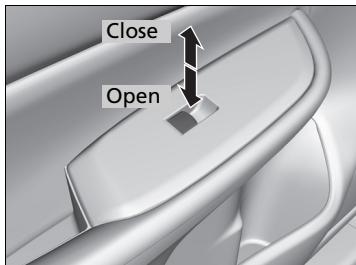
### Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

## ■ Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function\*

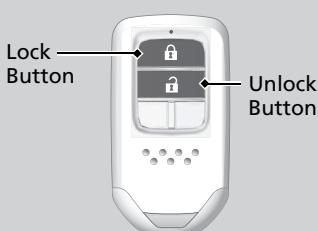


**To open:** Push the switch down.

**To close:** Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

## ■ Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote \*



**To open:** Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

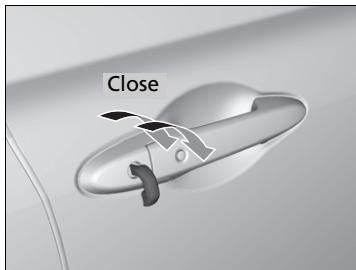
**To close:** Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

### »Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote \*

If you open/close the windows with the remote, the sunroof will open/close automatically along with them.

## ■ Closing the Windows with the Key\*



Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

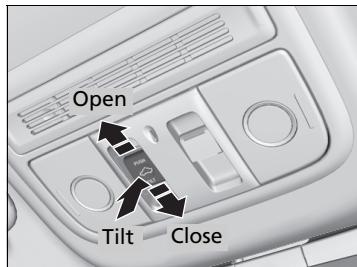
## ☒ Closing the Windows with the Key\*

If you close the windows with the key, the sunroof will close automatically along with them.

## Opening/Closing the Sunroof

You can only operate the sunroof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the sunroof.

### Using the Sunroof Switch



#### Automatic operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back firmly.

**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunroof will automatically open or close all the way. To stop the sunroof midway, touch the switch briefly.

#### Manual operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

#### Tilting the sunroof up

**To tilt:** Push on the centre of the sunroof switch.

**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

### »Opening/Closing the Sunroof

## WARNING

Opening or closing the sunroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the sunroof before opening or closing it.

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

#### NOTICE

Opening the sunroof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the sunroof panel or motor.

#### Models with power window auto-open/close function except driver's window

The sunroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Closing driver's door cancels this function.

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the sunroof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the sunroof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

\* Not available on all models

▶Sunroof\*

You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the sunroof\*.

- ▶ **Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote\*** P. 157
- ▶ **Closing the Windows with the Key\*** P. 158

## POWER Button

### Changing the Power Mode



#### VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)

The button is off.

The steering wheel is locked.

The power to all electrical components is turned off.

#### ACCESSORY

The button blinks (in red).

Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.

#### ON

The button blinks (in red).

All electrical components can be used.

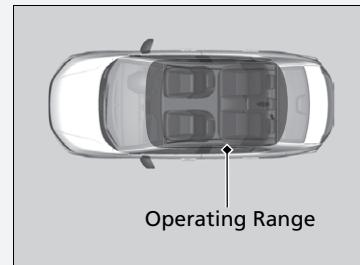
#### Without pressing the brake pedal

- Press the button.
- Press the button without the transmission in **P**.
- Press the button with the transmission in **P**.

#### POWER Button

##### POWER Button Operating Range

You can start the power system when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.



If the battery of the keyless remote is getting low, the power system may not start when you push the **POWER** button. If the power system does not start, refer to the following link.

- ☒ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak**  
P. 391

The power system may also start if the keyless remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

#### ON mode:

The **POWER** button is on (in red), if power system is on.

## ■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in **P** and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the 12-volt battery.

When in this mode:

The steering wheel does not lock. You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system.

Press the **POWER** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

## ■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

## ■ POWER Button

If the power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF to ACCESSORY, press the **POWER** button while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the mode to change.

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

## ■ Keyless Remote Reminder



When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote in another location.

### ■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

### ■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

## » Keyless Remote Reminder

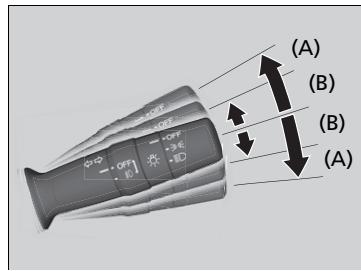
When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the power system has been turned on, you can no longer change the **POWER** button mode or restart the power system. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **POWER** button.

Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

## Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ (A): Turn signal

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

### ■ (B): One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink 3 times.

- If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

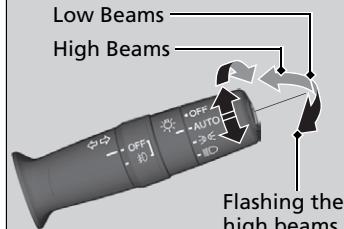
### Turn Signals

The turn signal indicator on the instrument panel will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

#### ► Indicators P. 92

# Light Switches

## Manual Operation



- Turns on position, rear side marker, tail, and rear licence plate lights
- Turns on headlights, position, rear side marker, tail, and rear licence plate lights

Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the position of the power mode setting.

### ■ High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

### ■ Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

### ■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

### ■ Lights off\*

Turn the lever to **OFF** either when:

- The transmission is in **P**.
- The parking brake is applied.

To turn the lights on again, turn the lever to OFF to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The transmission is taken out of **P** and the parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

## Light Switches

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

### ☞ Indicators P. 92

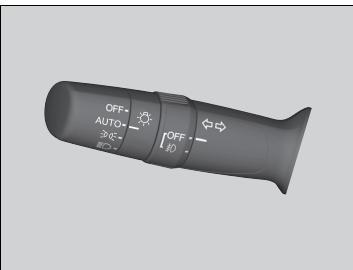
Do not leave the lights on when the power system is off because it will cause the 12-volt battery to discharge.

### Models without headlight adjuster

If you sense that the level of the headlights is abnormal, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)\*



Automatic lighting control can be used when the power mode is in ON.

When the light switch is in **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

The headlights come on when you unlock a door in dark areas with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

- ▶ Once you lock the door, the headlights will go off.

## ■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

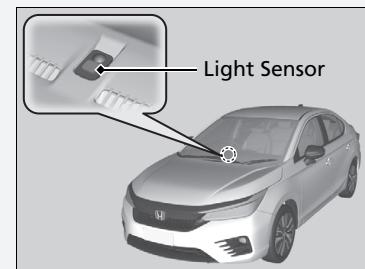
If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO\*** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

## ■ Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)\*

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.



## ■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

- ▶ **Settings** P. 123

## ■ Headlight Integration with Wipers \*

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

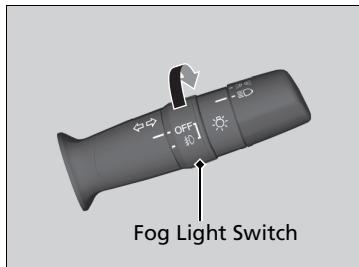
### » Headlight Integration with Wipers \*

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**.

The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

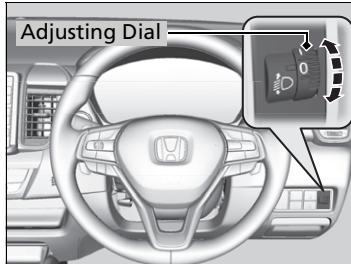
At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

## Fog Lights\*



Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

## Headlight Adjuster\*



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights when the position lights are on.

Turn the adjustment dial to select an appropriate angle for the headlights.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

### ■ To select the adjustment dial position

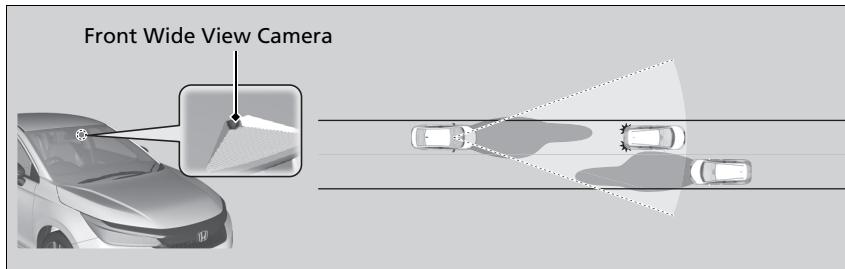
Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

Condition	Dial position
A driver	0
A driver and a front passenger	1
Five persons in the front and rear seats	2
Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the boot, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	3
A driver and luggage in the boot, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	

\* Not available on all models

## Auto High-Beam \*

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.



### ▶Auto High-Beam \*

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and switch the headlights between high beam and low beam manually if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.

#### ▶Front Wide View Camera P. 292

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean. When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

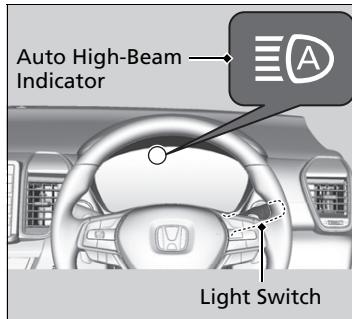
If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

You can change the auto high-beam system on and off.

#### ▶Settings P. 123

## How to Use the Auto High-Beam

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and the auto high-beam is activated.



- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to  then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

### Indian models

- Drive the vehicle for a while.

### How to Use the Auto High-Beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. In case of the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreens frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources, such as street lights, electric billboards and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam when:

- Windscreens wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected a dense fog.

## ■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When auto high-beam is active, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

### Switching to high beam:

All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 30 km/h or more.
- There are no preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are few street lights on the road ahead.



### Switching to low beam:

One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h or less.
- There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are many street lights on the road ahead.

## ▶How to Use the Auto High-Beam

### Indian models

If you move the lever from the low beam position, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off.

## ■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

### Except Indian models

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

#### Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams then release it or push the lever forward to the high beam position.

- To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.
- Pull the lever towards you and hold it over two seconds then release it.
- Turn the light switch to  and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

#### Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to .

- To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

### Indian models

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow the procedure below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

#### Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to .

- To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

## Daytime Running Lights

The position/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

### Models without automatic lighting control

- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is off.

Setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) will turn off the daytime running lights.

### Models with automatic lighting control

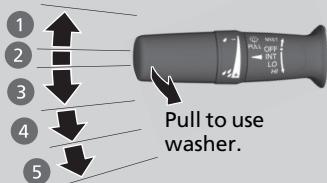
- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.

Setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) will turn off the daytime running lights.

The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the head light switch is in **AUTO** and it is getting darker outside.

## Wipers and Washers

### Windscreen Wipers/Washers



- ① **MIST**
- ② **OFF**
- ③ **INT**
- ④ **LO:** Low speed wipe
- ⑤ **HI:** High speed wipe

The windscreens wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

#### ■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

#### ■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

#### ■ Adjusting wiper operation\*

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.

- Lower speed, fewer sweeps
- Higher speed, more sweeps

#### ■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, then stop.

### ►►Wipers and Washers

#### NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreens will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

#### NOTICE

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

#### Models with intermittent time adjustment ring

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens.

When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting ( ) and the LO setting become the same.

\* Not available on all models

## ☒Wipers and Washers

### NOTICE

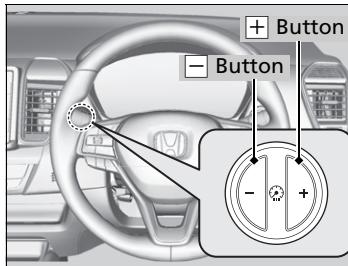
In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen.

Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

If the wipers stop operating due to any obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.

Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), then remove the obstacle.

## Brightness Control



When the power mode is in ON, you can use the **[+]** or **[−]** button to adjust instrument panel brightness.

**Brighten:** Press the **[+]** button.

**Dim:** Press the **[−]** button.

You will hear a beep when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum\*. Several seconds after you have adjusted the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

### ■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.



### » Brightness Control

The brightness of the instrument panel will be reduced when the following conditions:

#### Models without automatic lighting control

- The power mode is in ON.
- The position lights are turned on.

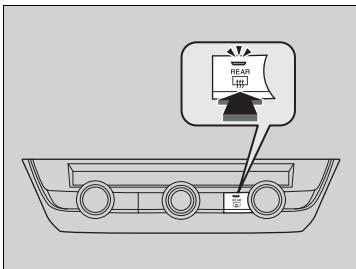
#### Models with automatic lighting control

- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in any position other than off and it is dark outside.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

\* Not available on all models

## Rear Demister Button



Press the rear demister button to demist the rear window when the power mode is in ON.

The rear demister automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature.

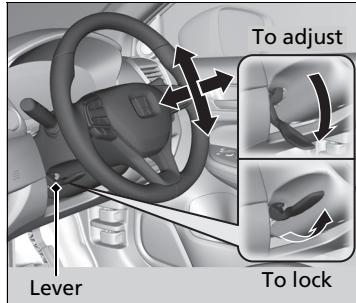
However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

### ▶Rear Demister Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the power system is stopped. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

## Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. While the vehicle is stopped, push the steering wheel adjustment lever down.
  - The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
  - Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up to lock the steering wheel in position.
  - After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

### ▶Adjusting the Steering Wheel

#### **⚠️ WARNING**

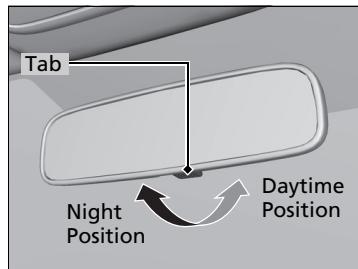
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

## Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

### Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions\*



Flip the tab to switch the position.

The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

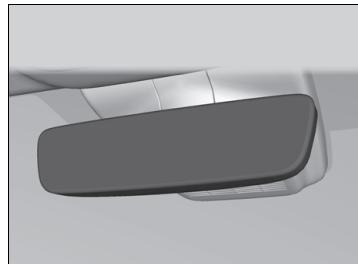
### Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

► **Front Seats** P. 183

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror\*

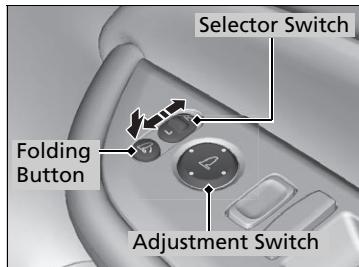


When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based on inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror\*

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in **R**.

## Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ Mirror position adjustment

**L/R selector switch:** Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

**Mirror position adjustment switch:** Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

### ■ Folding door mirrors

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

## ■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function\*

### ■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the remote transmitter, or press the door lock button on the front door.

- The mirrors start folding in automatically.

### ■ Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock the driver's door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

- The mirrors start folding out automatically.

### ■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function\*

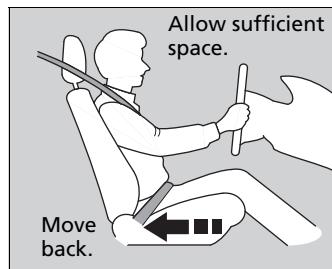
You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

You can turn the automatic folding door mirror function on and off.

#### ► **Settings** P. 123

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

## Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

### » Seats

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

### » Front Seats

#### **⚠ WARNING**

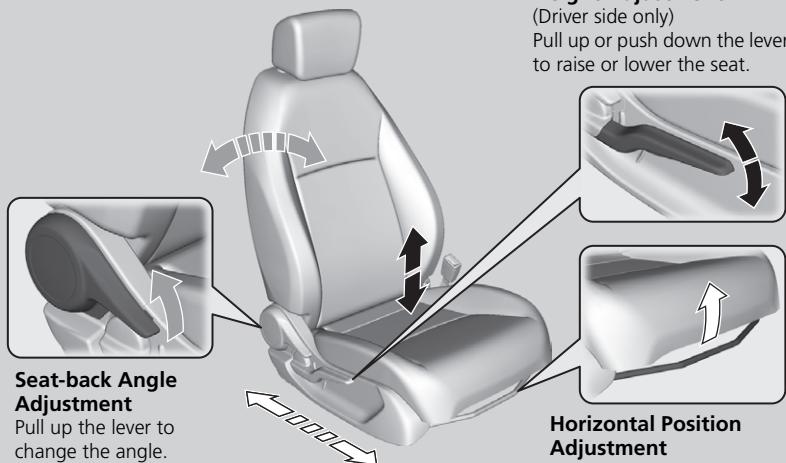
Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

## ■ Adjusting the Seat Positions



**Seat-back Angle Adjustment**  
Pull up the lever to change the angle.

### Height Adjustment

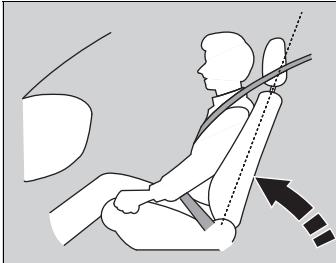
(Driver side only)

Pull up or push down the lever to raise or lower the seat.

### Horizontal Position Adjustment

Pull up on the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.

## ■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

### » Adjusting the Seat-Backs

## ⚠ WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

**Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.**

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

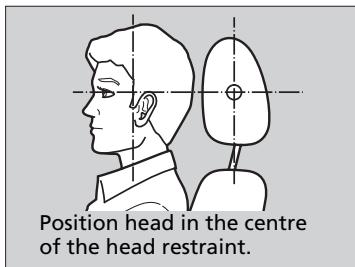
Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

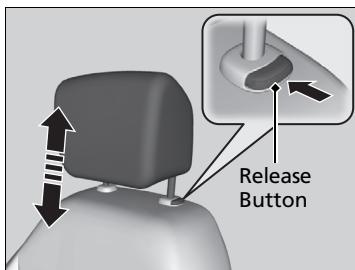
## Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in both front seating positions.

### ■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraints



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.



**To raise the head restraint:** Pull it upward.  
**To lower the head restraint:** Push it down while pressing the release button.

### ■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraints

#### WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

## ■ Removing and Reinstalling the Front Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

### To remove the head restraint:

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

### To reinstall the head restraint:

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

### » Removing and Reinstalling the Front Head Restraints

## ⚠ WARNING

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

## Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints\*, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the power mode is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

### ◀ Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

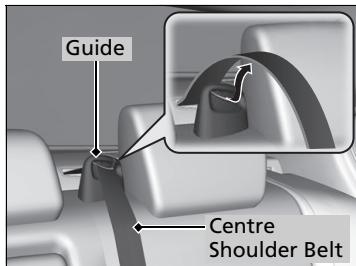
#### **WARNING**

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

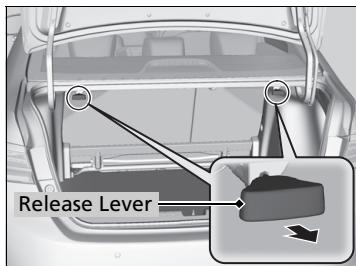
Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

## Rear Seats

### Folding Down the Rear Seats\*



1. Remove the centre shoulder belt from the guide.



2. Pull the release lever in the boot to release the lock.



3. Fold the seat-back down.

#### » Folding Down the Rear Seats\*

### WARNING

**Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.**

The rear seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the boot.

Never drive with the seat-back folded down and the boot lid open.

☞ **Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 88**

To lock the seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.

When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back, and the centre shoulder belt is re-positioned in the guide.

**Make sure all items in the boot or items extending through the opening into the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.**

\* Not available on all models

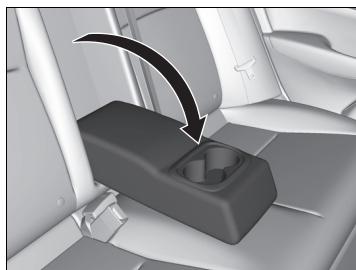
## Armrest

### Using the Front Seat Armrest



The console lid can be used as an armrest.

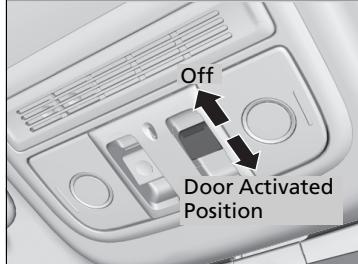
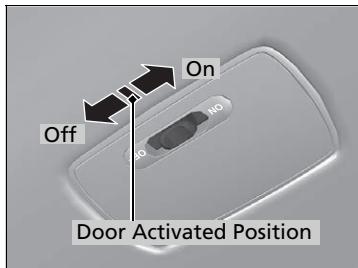
### Using the Rear Seat Armrest\*



Pull down the armrest in the centre backrest.

## Interior Lights

### Interior Light Switches



#### ■ ON

The interior light comes on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

#### ■ Door activated

The interior light comes on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

#### ■ OFF

The interior light remains off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

### » Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior light fades out and goes off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The light goes off after 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

#### » Settings P. 123

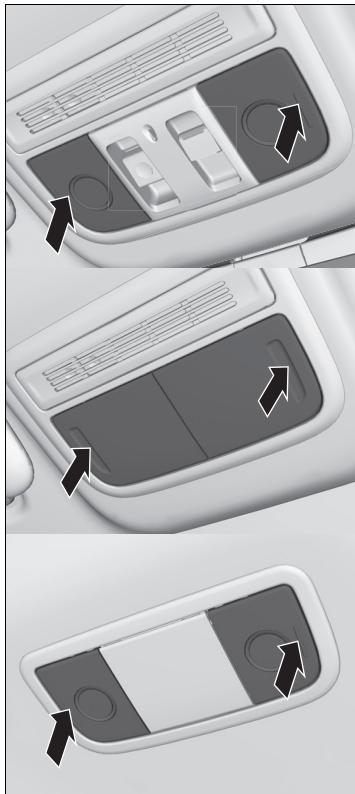
The interior light goes off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, the interior light goes off after about 15 minutes.

To avoid draining the 12-volt battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the power system is off.

## Map Light Switches



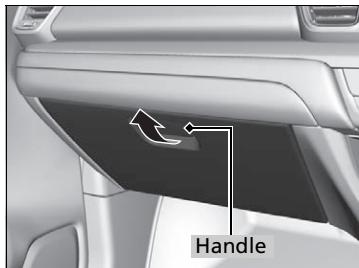
The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses.

## Map Light Switches

When the front interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the lens.

## Storage Items

### Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

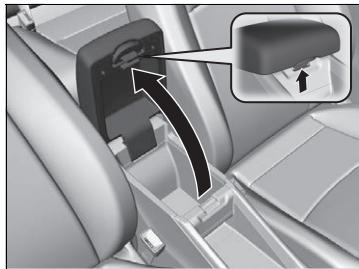
### »Glove Box

#### WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

### Console Compartment

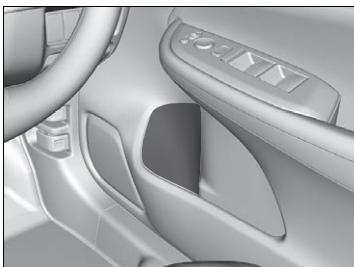


Pull the handle to open the console compartment.

## Beverage Holders



### Front seat beverage holders



### Front door side beverage holders

Are located on the both of front door side pockets.



### Rear door side beverage holders

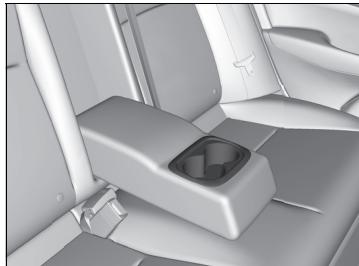
Are located on the both of rear door side pockets.

## Beverage Holders

### NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

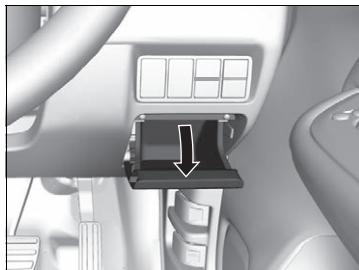
Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.



### ■ Rear seat beverage holders\*

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

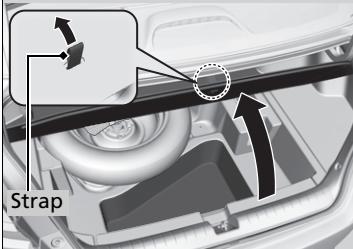
### ■ Driver's Side Pocket



Pull the lid to open the pocket.

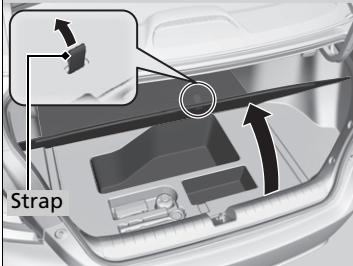
## Under-Floor Storage Area

Models with compact spare tyre



Pull the strap and open the lid.

Models with tyre repair kit



## ■ Coat Hook\*



There is a coat hook on the rear right grab handle of right side. Pull it down to use it.

### »Coat Hook\*

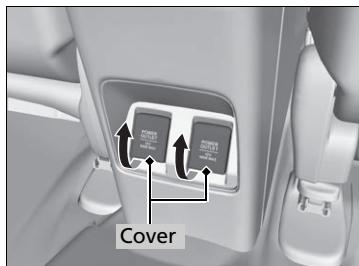
The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

## Other Interior Convenience Items



### ■ Accessory power socket on the console panel

Open the cover to use it.



### ■ Accessory power sockets on the back of the console compartment\*

Open the cover to use it.

### ■ Accessory Power Sockets

#### NOTICE

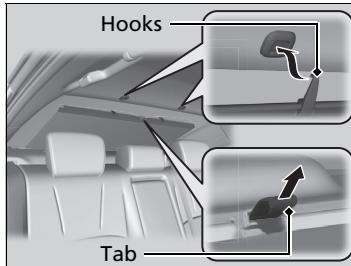
Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the power socket.

The accessory power sockets are designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts or less (15 amps).

To prevent 12-volt battery drain, use the power socket with the power system on.

When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

## Rear Sunshade \*



Pull the tab and roll up the sunshade all the way. Use the hooks to hang it.

## »Rear Sunshade\*

### NOTICE

Be careful not to scratch the heating elements on the rear windscreen when using the rear sunshade.

### Indian Models

Do not use the sunshade while driving as it could obstruct the driver's view.

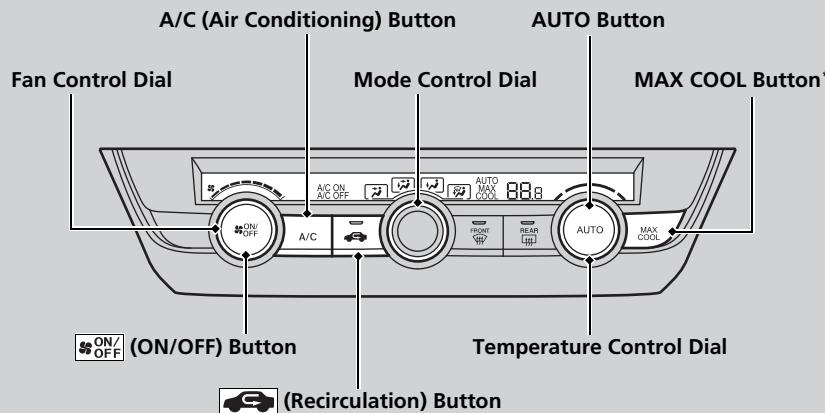
The sunshade can be used to protect the interior when parking the car in direct sunlight for a long period of time.

Check and follow your local legal requirements before using the sunshade.

## Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
|  Dashboard vents and back of the console compartment            |  Floor vents              |
|  Dashboard and floor vents, and back of the console compartment |  Floor and demister vents |



Use the system when the power system is on.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.
3. Press the **(ON/OFF)** button to cancel.

### Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

#### Models without MAX COOL button

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

#### Models with MAX COOL button

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, press the **MAX COOL** button.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Pressing the **(ON/OFF)** button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

## ■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the  (Recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

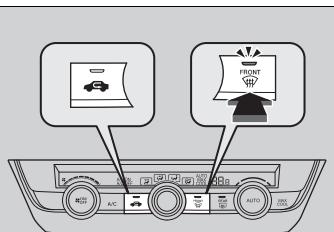
Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

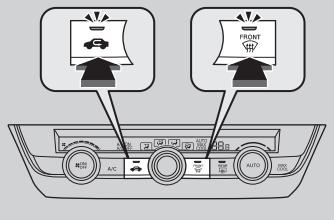
### » Using Automatic Climate Control

The high voltage battery level being low may reduce the climate control system performance.

## ■ Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows



### ■ To rapidly defrost the windows



Pressing the  button to turn the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

#### Except African and Latin American models

Press the  button (indicator off) to switch to the fresh air mode.

- If you want to rapidly defrost the window:

    Press the  button (indicator on).

Press the  button again to turn it off and the system will return to the previous settings.

### ■ Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

**For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.**

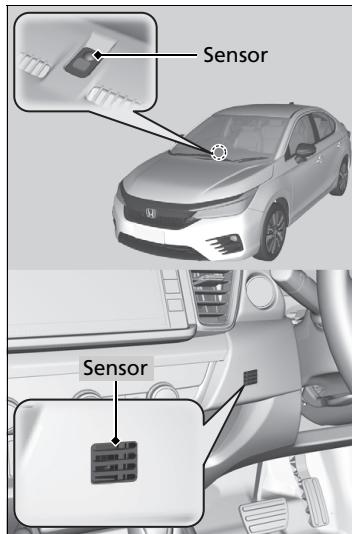
Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When hot or cold air hits the windscreens, the outside of the windscreens may fog up.

#### ■ To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

## Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



# Features

If this vehicle is equipped with an audio system, please refer to the audio system manual.

Consult a dealer for details.



# Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.

## Before Driving

Driving Preparation .....	208
Load Limit.....	210

## Towing a Trailer.....

## When Driving

Turning on the Power .....	212
Precautions While Driving.....	219
Transmission .....	220
Shifting.....	221
Deceleration Paddle Selector* .....	224
ECON Mode .....	227
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System.....	228

## Cruise Control\* .....

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System ..	235
Agile Handling Assist .....	237
Deflation Warning System* .....	238
High Voltage Battery.....	242

## Honda Sensing\* .....

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) .....	246
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).....	258
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ..	274
Road Departure Mitigation System...	285
Front Wide View Camera.....	292

## Braking

Brake System.....	294
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....	300
Brake Assist System .....	301
Emergency Stop Signal .....	302

## Parking Your Vehicle

When Stopped .....	303
Parking Sensor System* .....	305

## Refueling

Fuel Information .....	309
How to Refuel .....	310

## Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions....

\* Not available on all models

## Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

### Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  - Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  - Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  - When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
  - If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
  - Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
- **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 344
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  - There are blind spots from the inside.

### Exterior Checks

#### NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

## ■ Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  - Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
- ☒ **Load Limit** P. 210
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  - They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  - An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  - They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the boot.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  - Adjust the head restraint, too.
- ☒ **Seats** P. 183
- ☒ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints** P. 186
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
  - Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
- ☒ **Mirrors** P. 180
- ☒ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 179

### »Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the boot, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

#### Models with headlight adjuster

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself.

#### ☒ **Headlight Adjuster\*** P. 169

\* Not available on all models

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  - They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  - ☒ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 44
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  - Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.

☒ **Indicators** P. 92

## Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

☒ **Specifications** P. 420

☒ Load Limit

### ⚠ **WARNING**

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

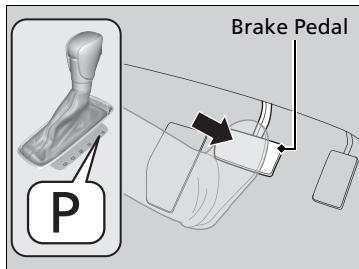
Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

## Towing a Trailer

---

Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

## Turning on the Power



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.  
The electric parking brake indicator comes on for 30 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.
2. Check that the transmission is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.  
► Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.

### Turning on the Power

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the power system.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When turning on the power system in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce 12-volt battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the power system does not activate.

#### Immobilizer System P. 153

When you set the power mode to ON, you may feel the brake pedal slightly sink down. This is normal.

Bring the keyless remote close to the **POWER** button if the 12-volt battery in the keyless remote is weak.

#### If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 391



3. Without depressing the accelerator pedal, press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal.
4. Check the **READY** indicator.
  - ▶ Keep depressing the brake pedal until the **READY** indicator comes on.
  - ▶ The **READY** indicator comes on when the power system is on and you can start driving.
  - ▶ If the outside temperature is extremely low, you cannot drive until conditions are improved. In this case, the **READY** indicator does not come on and a warning message appears on the driver information interface.

☞ **Indicators** P. 92

#### » Turning on the Power

The power system may not activate if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **POWER** button to start the power system.

If the power system does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

The engine may not run when the vehicle is ready for driving.

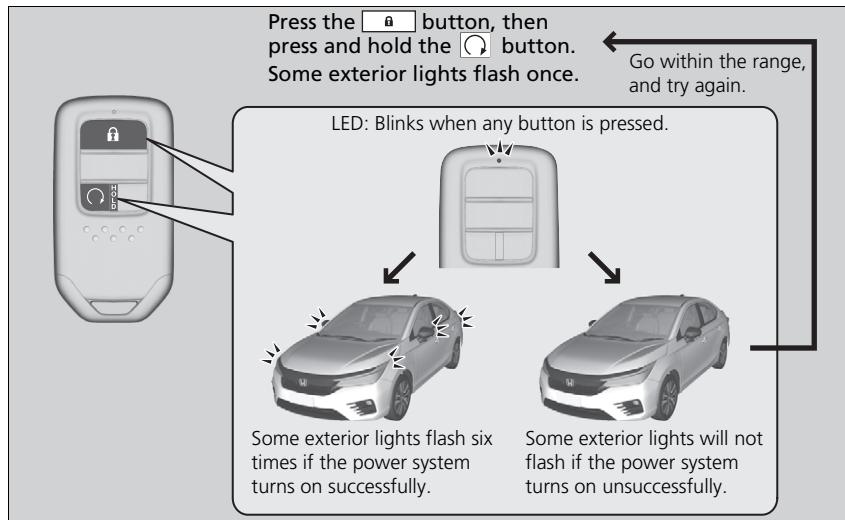
You can start driving with the **READY** indicator on. If you press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal with the **READY** indicator on, the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF and you cannot start driving.

☞ **Indicators** P. 92

## ■ Remote Engine Start

You can remotely turn the power system on using the keyless remote.

### ■ To turn the power system on



The power system is on for up to 10 minutes without you starting the vehicle. To extend the time for another 10 minutes during the first 10 minutes, press the button, then press and hold the button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

### ▶ Remote Engine Start

## ⚠ WARNING

Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing carbon monoxide can kill you or cause unconsciousness.

Never use the remote engine starter when the vehicle is parked in a garage or other area with limited ventilation.

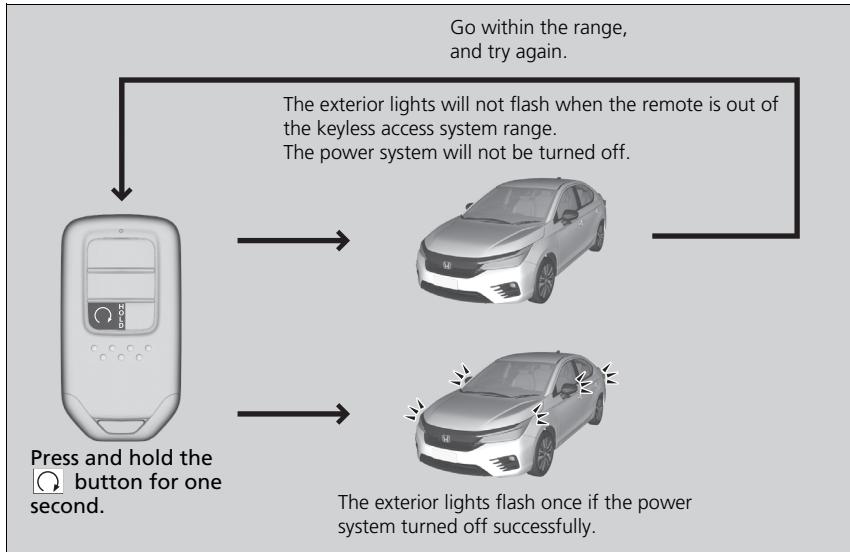
The remote engine start may violate local laws. Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.

If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the remote, the range will be reduced. The range may be less when the vehicle is running. This distance may vary by external electrical interference.

The power system may not be turned on by the remote engine start if:

- You have disabled a remote engine start setting using the driver information interface.
- Settings** P. 123
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
  - The transmission is in a position other than **P**.
  - The bonnet is open, or any door or the boot is unlocked.

## ■ To turn the power system off



### » Remote Engine Start

- You have already used the remote twice to turn the power system on.
- Another registered keyless remote is in the vehicle.
- There is any antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The telematics unit malfunctions\*.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The 12-volt battery charge is too low.

The power system may be turned off while it is running if:

- You do not start the vehicle within 10 minutes of turning the power system on with the remote.
- The power system is turned off by using the remote.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The bonnet is open, or any door, or the boot is unlocked.
- You press the shift lever release button.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The 12-volt battery is low.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The malfunction indicator lamp comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.

\* Not available on all models

#### ☒ Remote Engine Start

While the power system is on, the vehicle will automatically precondition inside the vehicle.

When it is warm outside:

- The climate control system is activated in recirculation mode.

When it is cold outside:

- The demister is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear demister is activated.

## Starting to Drive

When the power system is turned on using the **Q** button on the keyless remote

- Depress and hold the brake pedal, then press the **POWER** button.

When the power system is turned on in any case

- Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, check that the **READY** indicator is on, then put the shift lever is in **D**. Select **R** when reversing.
- With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.

► Make sure the parking brake indicator (red) goes off.

☛ **Parking Brake** P. 294

## Hill Start Assist System

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Put the transmission into **D** or **B** when facing uphill, or **R** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

## Starting to Drive

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.

When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

When the power system is turned on using the **Q** button on the keyless remote

The power system is turned off when the transmission is taken out of **P** before the **POWER** button is pressed. Follow the step 1 when starting to drive.

As a hybrid vehicle, the sounds and vibrations from the engine may be absent even though the vehicle is ready for driving. It also makes you fail to recognise that you can start.

Make sure to check if the **READY** indicator is on before you start to drive.

## Hill Start Assist System

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

## ■ Stopping the Power System

You can turn the power system off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Put the transmission into **P**.
2. Press the **POWER** button.

## Precautions While Driving

### In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

### In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

### In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the power system or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

### ▶▶Precautions While Driving

**CAUTION:** Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

#### NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

#### NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the power system will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not select **[N]** while driving as you will lose regenerative braking (and acceleration) performance.

## Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

# Transmission

## Creeping

As with a conventional petrol-powered vehicle with an automatic transmission, this vehicle will creep.

Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

## Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the vehicle to react similar to an automatic transmission vehicle, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

## Precautions While Driving

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the power system or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km. You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

## In Rain

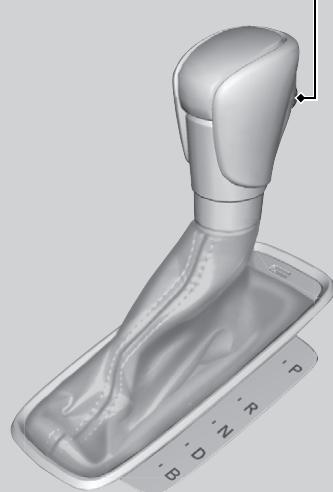
Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

Slowly decelerate when you shift down. If the road is slippery, sudden regenerative braking can cause the tyres to skid.

# Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

## ■ Shift lever positions



**P**

**Park**

Used when parking, before turning off or starting the power system

**R**

**Reverse**

Used when reversing

**N**

**Neutral**

Transmission is not locked

**D**

**Drive**

Used:

- For normal driving
- Models with paddle selector**
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily

**B**

**Drive (B)**

Used:

- When driving down a long hill and to increase regenerative braking.

**Models with paddle selector**

- The deceleration paddle selector can be used.

## »Shift lever positions

### ⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift position indicator.

While the High Voltage battery level is full, or the High Voltage battery temperature is low, regenerative braking may become less effective.

The beeper sounds and the message appears on the driver information interface when you depress the accelerator pedal with the shift position in **N**.

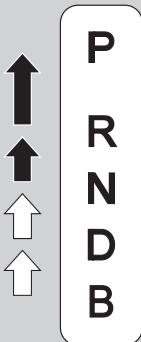
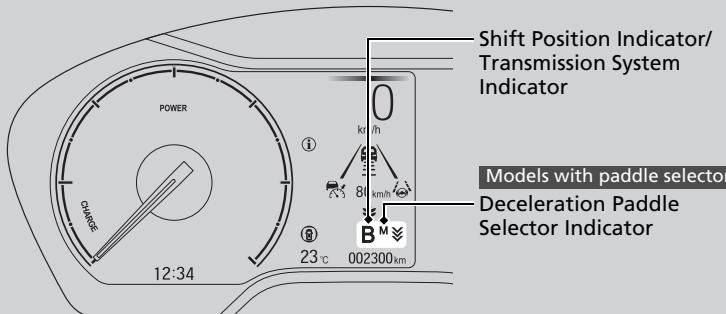
Change the transmission into **D** or **R** with the brake pedal depressed.

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) unless the shift lever is in **P**.

☒ Shift lever positions

You may occasionally find that it takes longer than usual for the vehicle to start moving when you select **[R]**, release the brake pedal, and/or depress the accelerator pedal. This may occur when the High Voltage battery level is extremely low, and does not indicate a vehicle malfunction.

## Shift Lever Operation



Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.

Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.

Press the shift lever release button and shift.

### Shift Lever Operation

#### NOTICE

When you change [D] to [R] and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the shift position indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

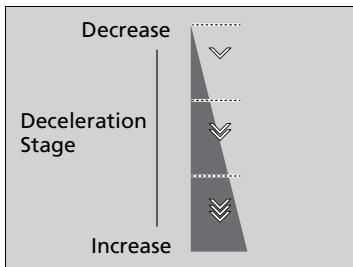
It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.

Depress the brake pedal first.

## Deceleration Paddle Selector\*

When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through three stages of deceleration.

When descending a hill, you can use the deceleration paddle selector to help maintain the rate of deceleration, thereby allowing you to keep a safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.



The default deceleration stage is . Each paddle selector operation makes a single stage deceleration change.

- The deceleration stage may not change if you pull the paddle selector continuously.

### To select the different stages of deceleration:

- Pull back the selector (right side) to decrease the deceleration stage.
  - Pull back the selector (left side) to increase the deceleration stage.
- Pull the selector for a few seconds when you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector.

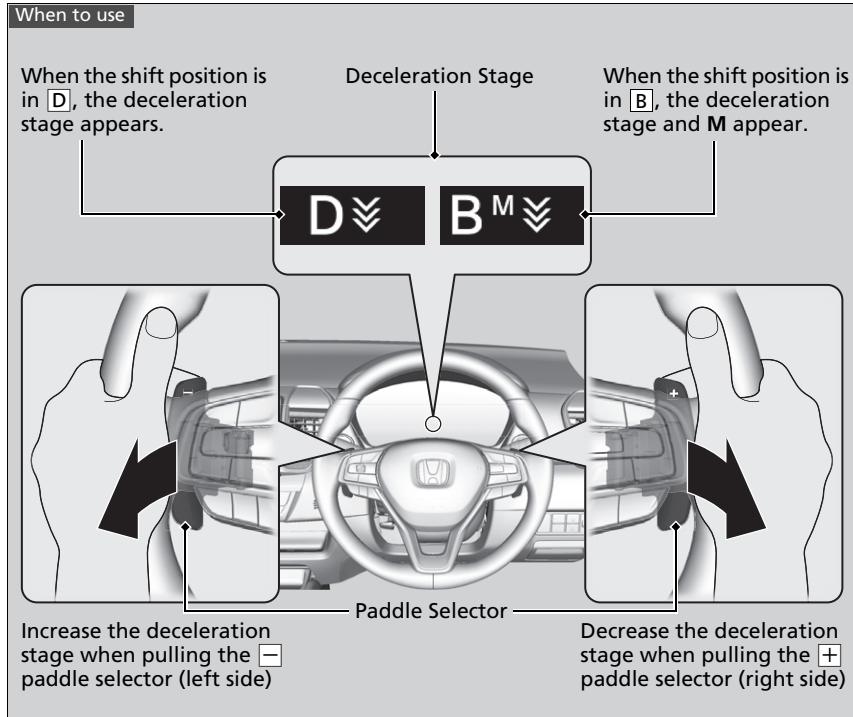
### Deceleration Paddle Selector\*

#### CAUTION

Rapidly increasing the deceleration rate by quickly shifting the deceleration paddle selector can cause the tyres to skid, resulting in a crash that could injure or kill someone.

Always maintain a reasonable rate of deceleration.

If you pull back right and left paddle selector at the same time, the deceleration stage may not change.



## » Deceleration Paddle Selector\*

In the following situations, the stage may not change and the stage icon will blink even if you pull back the selector. The deceleration stage may decrease or cancel automatically:

- The high voltage battery is fully charged or its temperature is too cold or too hot.
- The speed of the vehicle is beyond the deceleration range with the shift position is in **D**.
- Hybrid system protection is needed.

If either paddle selector is operated, ACC will cancel automatically.

### ■ When the shift position is in **D**

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change temporarily, and the stage will appear in the driver information interface.

When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, pull the **[+]** selector (right side) for a few seconds.

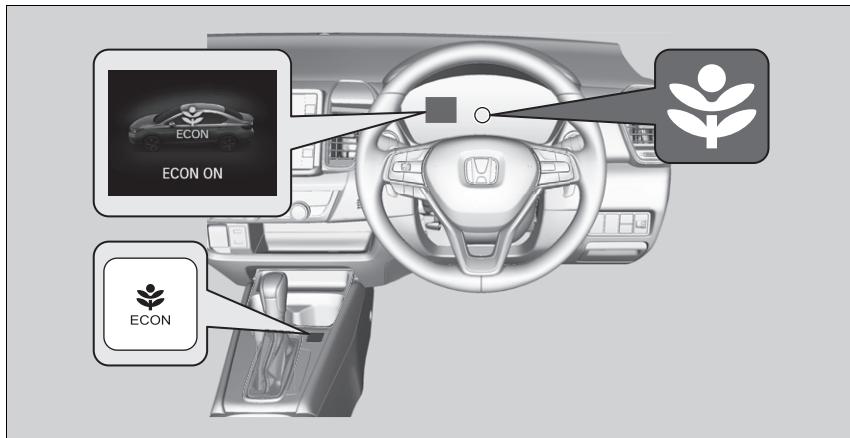
The deceleration paddle selector will cancel automatically and deceleration stage in the driver information interface disappear when you drive with constant speed, situations of acceleration and decelerate just before stopping your vehicle.

### ■ When the shift position is in **B**

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with **M** will appear in the driver information interface. The deceleration stage is not cancel automatically while the shift position is in **B**.

When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, move the shift position from **B** to **D**, or pull the **[+]** selector (right side) for a few seconds. When cancelled, deceleration stage in the driver information interface disappear.

## ECON Mode



The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.

The ECON mode helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine and climate control system.

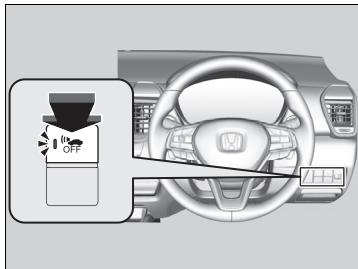
### »ECON Mode

While in ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuation.

## Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System

Alerts pedestrians when a vehicle is propelled solely by electricity, approaching at speeds around 20 km/h or less.

### ■ Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System OFF Button



Press the button to turn the system on and off.

- ▶ The indicator in the button comes on when the system is off.

The system is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

### ▶ Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System

The pause function of the Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System shall not be used unless for an obvious lack of necessity to emit sound for alert in the surrounding area and that it is certain that there are no pedestrians within the short distance.

## Cruise Control\*

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator. Use cruise control on motorways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

### »Cruise Control\*

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when travelling on open motorways in good weather.

It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

When not using cruise control:  
Turn off cruise control by pressing the **CRUISE** button.

While in ECON mode, it may take relatively more time to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

When to use

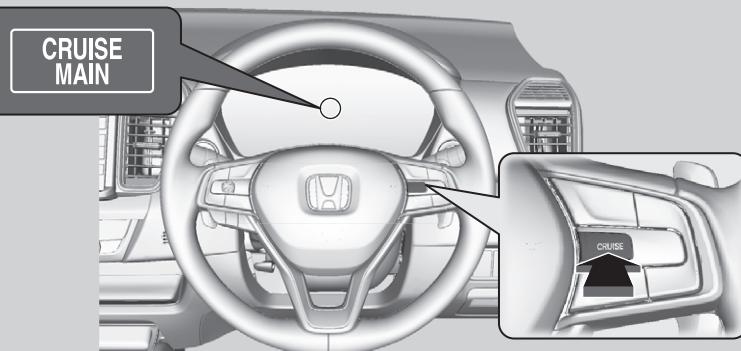
- Vehicle speed for cruise control:  
Desired speed in a range above  
roughly 40 km/h ~
- Shift positions for cruise control:  
In D

Always keep sufficient distance  
between you and the vehicle in  
front of you.

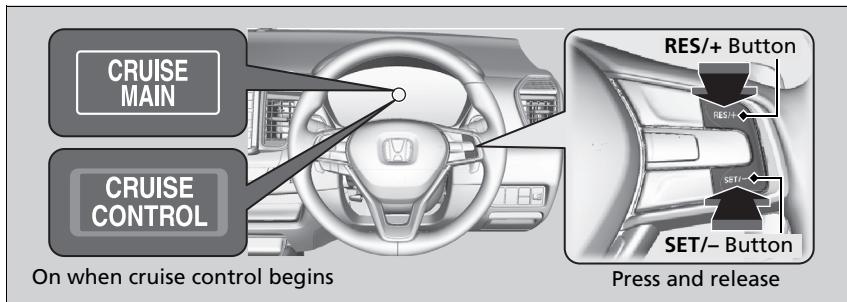


How to use

**CRUISE MAIN** is on in the driver information interface.  
Cruise control is ready to use.



## To Set the Vehicle Speed

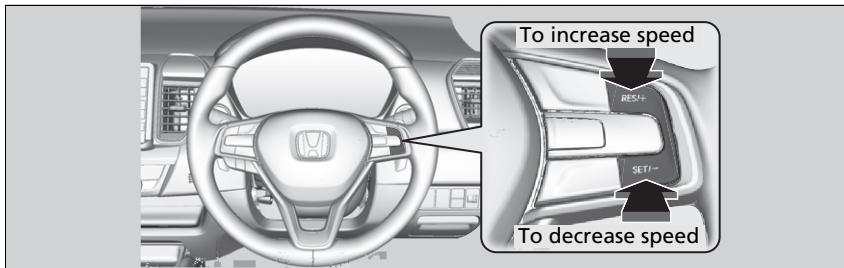


Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button when you reach the desired speed.

The moment you release the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

## To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **SET/-** buttons on the steering wheel.

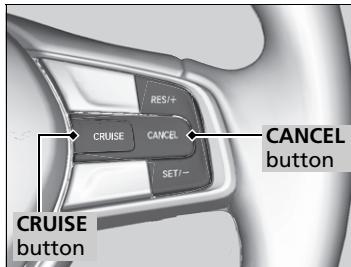


- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1.6 km/h.
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.

## >To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

## To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **CRUISE** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

### » To Cancel

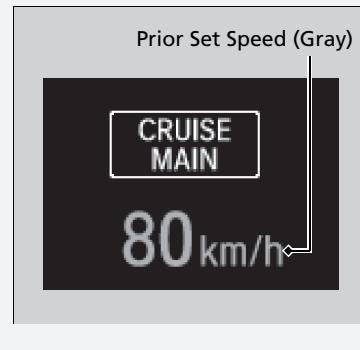
Resuming the prior set speed:

After you have cancelled cruise control, you can activate the cruise control with the prior set speed displayed on the driver information interface (in gray) by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 40 km/h or more.

When you turn the cruise control off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the driver information interface in gray.

When pressing the **RES/+** button, the cruise control is activated with displayed speed.

Then, when the **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator is displayed and you press the **RES/+** button during the prior set speed (in gray) is not displayed, the current vehicle speed is set as same as the condition of operating the **SET/-** button.



☒To Cancel

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

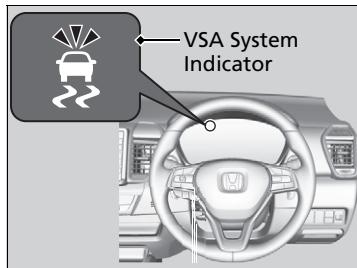
- When vehicle speed is less than 40 km/h
- When the **CRUISE** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 35 km/h or less, cruise control is cancelled automatically.

## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine and motor output and selectively applying the brakes.

### VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine and motor do not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

#### Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

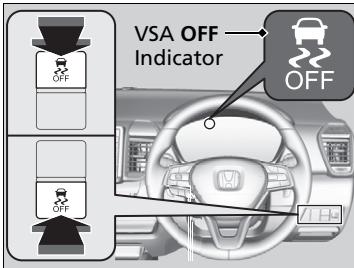
VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

The adaptive cruise control (ACC)\* (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, safety support\* indicators (amber) and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator\* may come on after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

\* Not available on all models

## VSA On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the (VSA OFF) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the (VSA OFF) button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after turning the power system on or while driving. This is normal.

## Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes the front wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

### »Agile Handling Assist

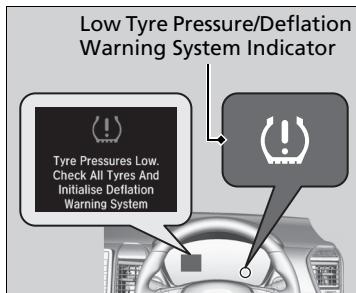
The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

## Deflation Warning System\*

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.



This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the driver information interface.

### Deflation Warning System\*

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.

Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

### Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 344

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.

## » Deflation Warning System\*

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- A compact spare tyre is used.

The adaptive cruise control (ACC)\* (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, safety support\* indicators (amber) and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

\* Not available on all models

## Deflation Warning System Initialisation

You must start deflation warning system initialisation every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before initialising the deflation warning system:

- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.

### Checking Tyres P. 344

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The shift position is in **P**.
- The power mode is in ON.

### Deflation Warning System Initialisation

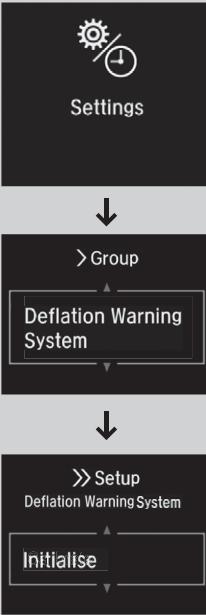
Deflation warning system cannot be initialised if a compact spare tyre is installed.

The initialisation process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40–100 km/h.

During this period, if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the initialisation process is not yet complete.

If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.



You can initialise the system from the customized features on the driver information interface.

1. Press (home) button.
  2. Roll the left selector wheel controls to select , then push the left selector wheel.  
► appears on the display.
  3. Roll the left selector wheel controls to select **Deflation Warning System**, then push the left selector wheel.  
► The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **Cancel** or **Initialise**.
  4. Roll the left selector wheel controls to select **Initialise**, then push the left selector wheel.  
► **Completed** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization setup screen.
- If the **Failed** message appears, repeat steps 3 – 4.
  - The initialisation process finishes automatically.

## High Voltage Battery

The High Voltage battery gradually discharges even if the vehicle is not in use. As a result, if your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time, the battery charge level will become low. Extended periods of time at a low state of charge will shorten battery life. To maintain the battery state of charge, drive your vehicle for more than 30 minutes at least once every three months.

Extreme high temperatures can affect the battery life. You can minimise the effects by parking the vehicle in the shade during the summer.

### ▶High Voltage Battery

Be careful not to let the High Voltage battery drain too much. If the battery level becomes close to zero, it will make it impossible to start the power system.

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of a front wide view camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.

Honda Sensing has following functions.

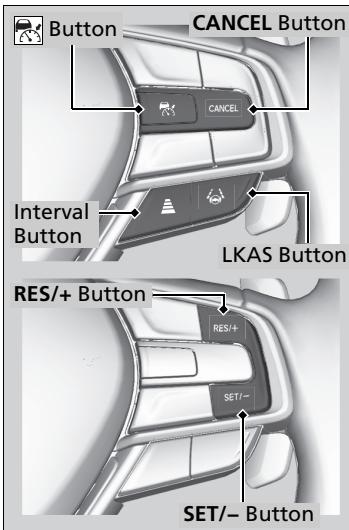
## ■ The functions which do not require switch operations to activate

- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ➔ P. 246
- Road Departure Mitigation System ➔ P. 285

## ■ The functions which require switch operations to activate

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ➔ P. 258
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ➔ P. 274

## Operation Switches for the ACC/LKAS



### ■ **Button**

Press to activate standby mode for ACC. Or press to cancel the system.

### ■ **LKAS Button**

Press to activate standby mode for LKAS. Or press to cancel the system.

### ■ **RES/+ and SET/- Buttons**

Press **RES/+** button to resume the ACC or increase the vehicle speed.  
Press **SET/-** button to set the ACC or decrease the vehicle speed.

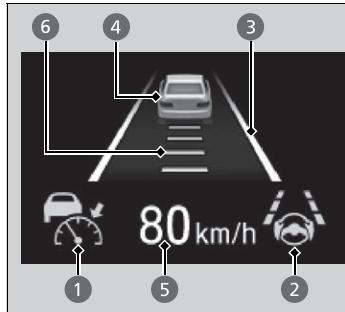
### ■ **Interval Button**

Press to change the ACC following-interval.

### ■ **CANCEL Button**

Press to cancel ACC.

## ■ Driver Information Interface Content



You can see the current state of ACC and LKAS.

- ① Indicates that ACC is ready to be activated.
  - Green: The system is on.
  - White: The system is standby.
  - Amber: There is a problem with the system.
- ② Indicates that LKAS is ready to be activated.
  - Green: The system is on.
  - White: The system is standby.
  - Amber: There is a problem with the system.
- ③ Indicates that LKAS is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.
  - Lane Lines: The system is on.
  - Double Lane Lines: The system is standby.
- ④ Indicates whether or not ACC detected the vehicle ahead.
- ⑤ Shows vehicle set speed in ACC.
  - White: Set Vehicle Speed
  - Gray: Prior Set Speed
- ⑥ Shows set vehicle interval in ACC.

## Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, pedestrians, or riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

### Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

#### Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collisions nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

⇒ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 251

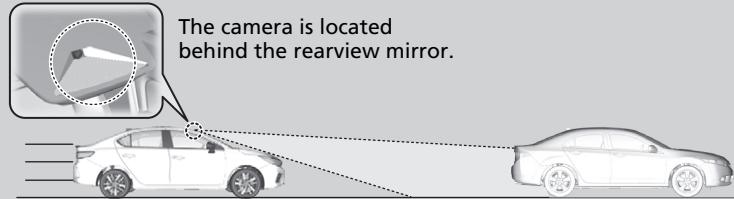
You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

⇒ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 292

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.

## ■ How the system works

### When to use



The camera is located  
behind the rearview mirror.

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h and there is a vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle in front of you.

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle drives at about 30 km/h or less and there is a chance of frontal collision with a detected oncoming vehicle when you turn right at an intersection.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:
  - An oncoming or stationary vehicle detected in front of you.
  - A pedestrian or moving bicycle detected in front of you.

### ▶How the system works

The camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians.

However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.

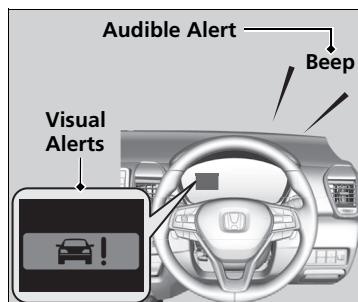
Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

**CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 251

The CMBS will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or the system determines there no longer is the potential for a collision.

The CMBS may also be cancelled when a driver operates the steering wheel and the brake or accelerator pedal to avoid a collision.

### ■ When the system activates



The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

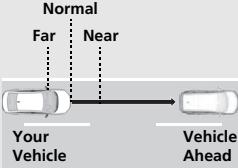
- ▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)

You can change the distance (**Far/Normal/Near**) between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on through driver information interface setting options.

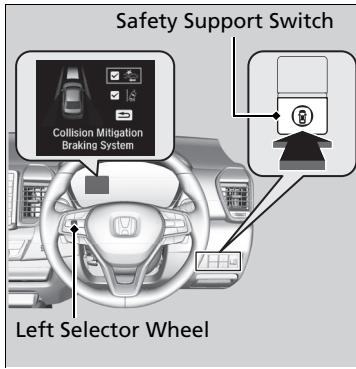
☞ **Settings** P. 123

## ■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS		
		The sensors detect a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		<p>There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.</p>	<p>When in <b>Far</b>, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in <b>Normal</b> setting, and in <b>Near</b>, at a shorter distance than in <b>Normal</b>.</p>	—
Stage two		<p>The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.</p>	<p>Visual and audible alerts.</p>	Lightly applied
Stage three		<p>The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.</p>		Forcefully applied

## CMBS On and Off



When you turn the CMBS on and off, do the following.

1. Press the safety support switch.
2. Roll the left selector wheel to the symbol and push it.
  - ▶ The message appears on the driver information interface when the system becomes on or off.
  - ▶ A tick appears in the box and the colour of the symbol changes green when the system is on. The tick disappear and the colour of the symbol changes gray when the system is off.

The CMBS is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

## Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the safety support indicator (amber) will come and stay on under certain conditions:

### ► CMBS Conditions and Limitations P. 251

The CMBS is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

You can also select the safety support content from the driver information interface.

### ► Driver Information Interface P. 111

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, safety support indicators (amber) and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator\* may come on after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS functions.

☒ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 292

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles, pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles may not be illuminated).

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

### » CMBS Conditions and Limitations

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g. the warning message appears too frequently).

## ■ Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- Abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong size, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre\*, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

**■ Examples of limitations on the correct detection of the camera due to the condition of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles**

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle suddenly cuts in front of or jumps out in front of you.
- The bicycle is stopped.
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways.
- When the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising them.
- When several pedestrians or bicycles are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When a pedestrian or moving bicycle crosses the road too quickly.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle approaches from the opposite direction.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you or oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- When part of a pedestrian (heads, limbs, etc.) is hidden by luggage.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, when their hands are raised, or they are running.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre (3.3 feet) or taller than about 2 metres (6.6 feet) in height.
- When the pedestrian is pushing a stroller or bicycle.

**» Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)**

Make sure that all the tyres are of the same specified size, type and brand, and that they are evenly worn. If you use tyres of different sizes, types, brands, or degree of wear, the system may not work properly.

Do not modify the suspension. Altering the height of the vehicle may prevent the system from working properly.

### ■ Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation

- When the vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, wheelchair, or other specially-shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as trucks that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.
- When the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is not in front of the vehicle.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is significantly large.
- When the vehicle or moving bicycle in front of you slows suddenly.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- When you approach the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrians or moving bicycles while accelerating rapidly or operating the steering wheel (except when turning right at an intersection etc.)<sup>\*1</sup>.
- When the moving bicycle is a child-sized bicycle, folding bicycle, three-wheeler or other bicycle with small tyres, or a long bicycle like a tandem bicycle.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.

\*1: When there is a possibility of a frontal collision with the oncoming vehicle while turning right, the CMBS is activated. However, it may not be activated if you suddenly turn the steering wheel.

## ■ Automatic shutoff

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) comes and stays on when:

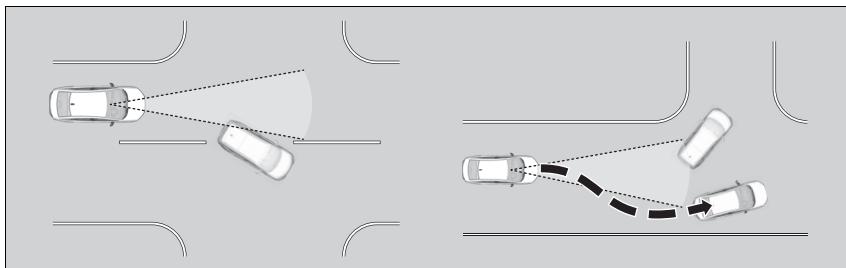
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (wrong tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).

Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

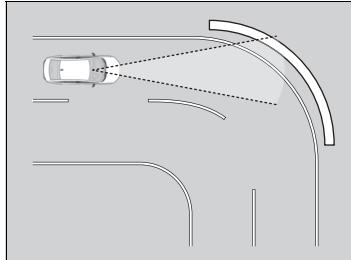
## With Little Chance of a Collision

Even if there is little chance of a collision, the CMBS may activate under the following conditions:

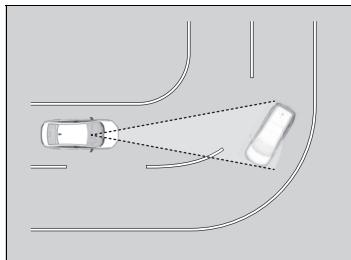
- Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle at an intersection, etc.



- When passing through a low or narrow gate at a speed well over the speed limit.
- When there are traffic signs or structures such as guard rails are beside the road along a curve.



- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where the oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

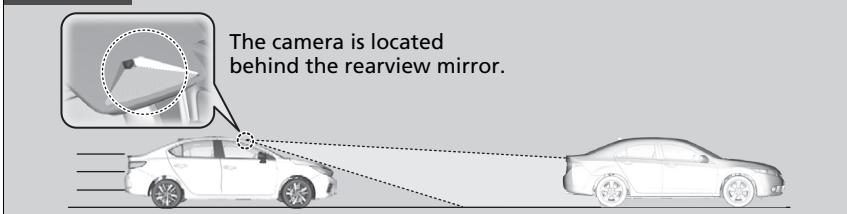


- When approaching stationary vehicles or walls, such as when parking.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

### When to use



- Vehicle speed for ACC: Desired speed in a range above roughly 30 km/h ~
- Shift position for ACC: In **D**

### ▶Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of ACC can lead to a crash.

Use ACC only when driving on motorways and in good road and weather conditions.

## ⚠ WARNING

ACC has limited braking capability. When your vehicle speed drops below 25 km/h, ACC will automatically cancel and no longer will apply your vehicle's brakes. Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal when conditions require.

### Important Reminder

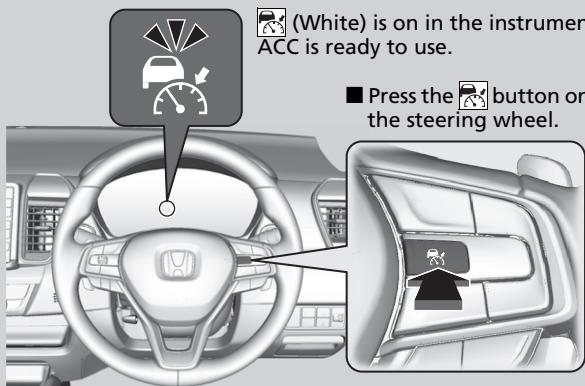
As with any system, there are limits to ACC. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▶ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 292

## ■ How to activate the system

### How to use



(White) is on in the instrument panel.  
ACC is ready to use.

■ Press the button on the steering wheel.

### » Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

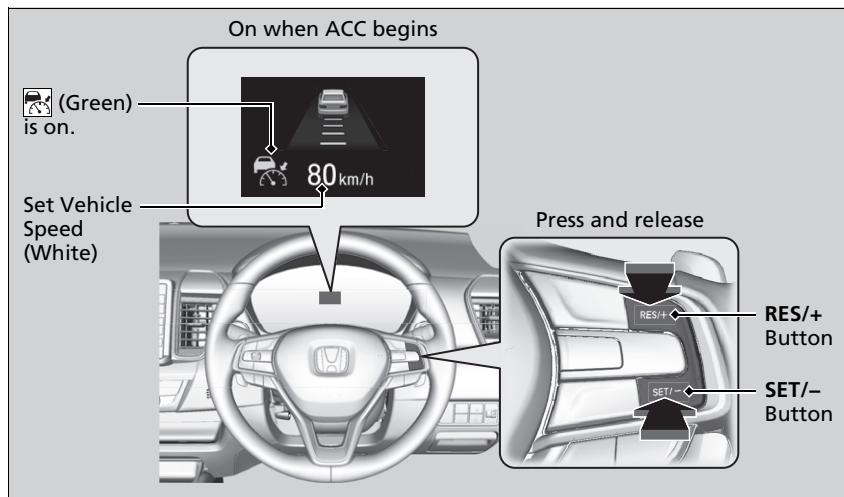
ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.

#### ☞ ACC with Conditions and Limitations P. 265

Do not use ACC under the following conditions:

- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.
- On roads with bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.). It prevents the system from detecting the distance between your vehicle and vehicle ahead of you properly.
- On roads with slippery or icy surfaces. The wheels may spin out and your vehicle may lose the control on the condition.

## To Set the Vehicle Speed



Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC begins.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

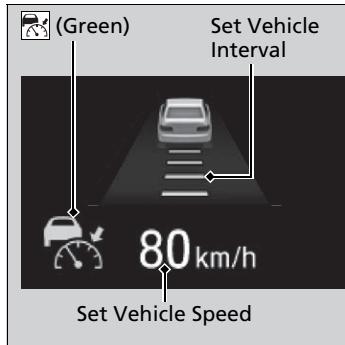
### Thai models

**CAUTION:** This equipment should be operated keeping the radiator at least 20 cm or more away from person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

This telecommunication equipment conforms to NTC technical requirement.

This telecommunication equipment has EMF radiation conforms to NTC EMF exposure standard.

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, safety support indicators (amber) and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator\* may come on after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



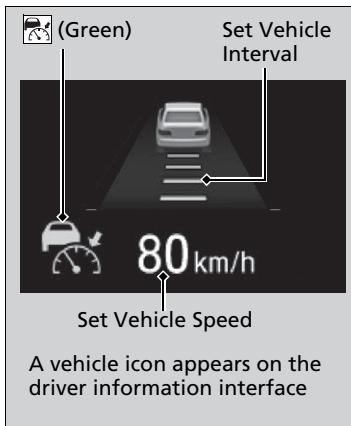
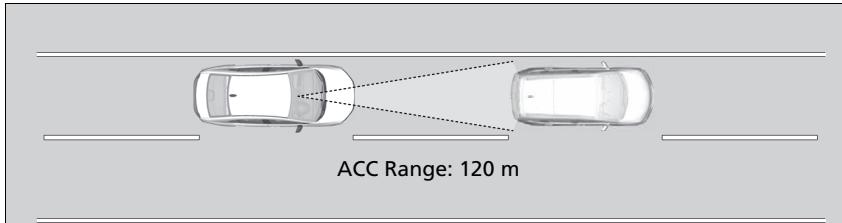
When ACC starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the driver information interface.

## When in Operation

### There is a vehicle ahead

ACC monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

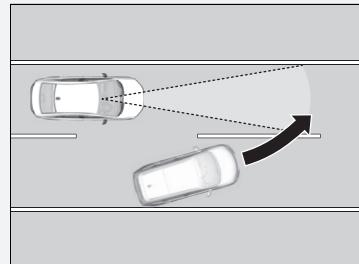
☞ To Set or Change Following-Interval P. 270



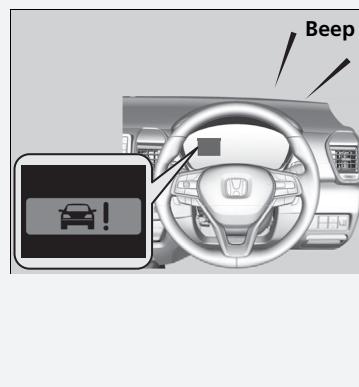
When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

### When in Operation

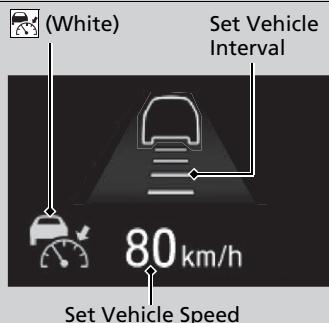
If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, a beeper sounds, a message appears on the driver information interface.



Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



## ■ There is no vehicle ahead



A vehicle icon with line contour appears on the driver information interface

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.

If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

## » When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC detecting range.

Change the **ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep** setting.

☞ **Settings** P. 123

## Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC. Additionally, ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.

☞ **ACC with Conditions and Limitations** P. 265

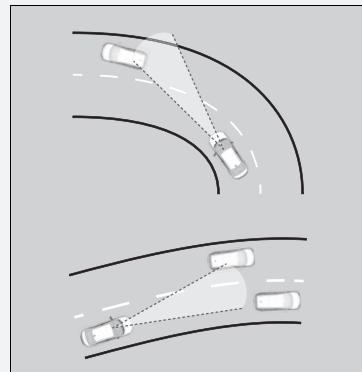
## ■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC range.

ACC stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC range.

☒When in Operation

- ACC may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g. curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g. operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).



- ACC may keep the interval between your vehicle and a vehicle ahead of you for a few seconds when a vehicle ahead of you enters/exits motorway or highway and then there is no vehicle in front of your vehicle.

## ■ ACC with Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the  indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

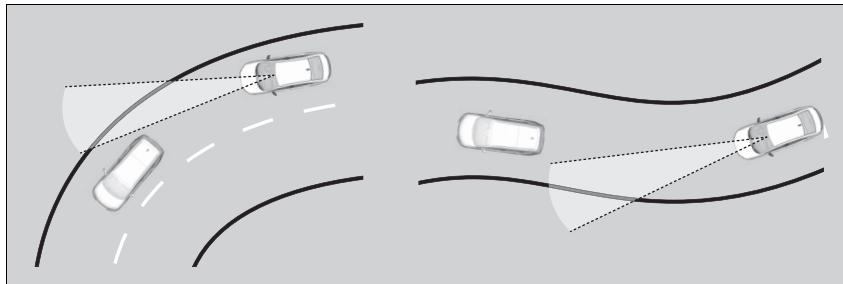
☒ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 292

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

## ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.



- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Puddles or a film of water is on the road surface.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

## ■ Vehicle conditions

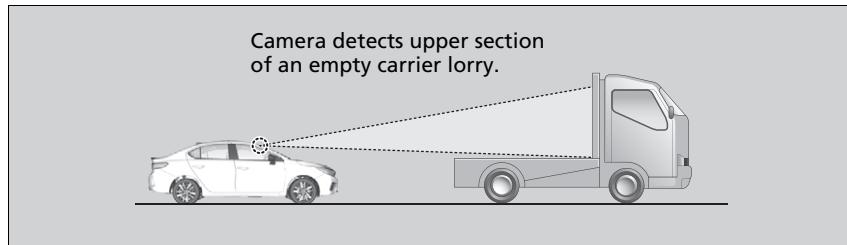
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film of the windscreens.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreens from the windscreens wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- Abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong size, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre\*, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

**■ Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you**

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.

### ■ Examples of conditions under which the system may not work properly

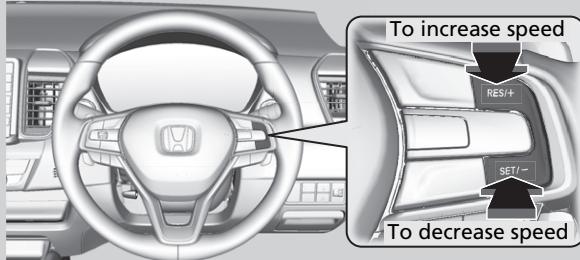
- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- When the vehicle ahead of you slows suddenly.
- When a vehicle ahead of you is specially-shaped.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as trucks that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.



- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on the edge of the lane.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a narrow vehicle such as a motorcycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.

## To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button on the steering wheel.



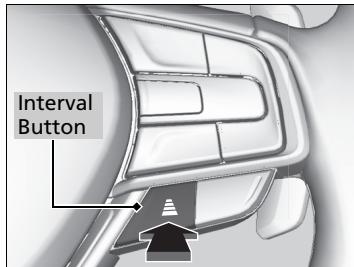
- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you press and hold the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.

### » To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then push and release the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

## ■ To Set or Change Following-interval



Press the interval button to change the ACC following-interval.

Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

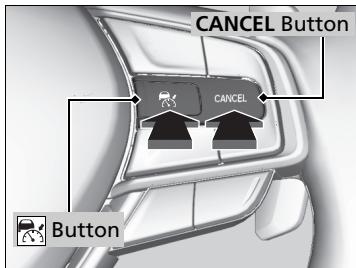
The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Following-interval	When the Set Speed is:		
	80 km/h	104 km/h	
Short		26.6 metres 1.2 sec	33.7 metres 1.2 sec
Middle		34.6 metres 1.6 sec	44.9 metres 1.6 sec
Long		44.0 metres 2.0 sec	57.1 metres 2.0 sec
Extra Long		53.6 metres 2.4 sec	70.0 metres 2.4 sec

#### » To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

## To Cancel



To cancel ACC, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
  - ▶ The indicator (green) on the driver information interface changes to the indicator (white).
- Press the button.
  - ▶ indicator (green) goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.
  - ▶ The indicator (green) on the driver information interface changes to the indicator (white).

## To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC, you can activate the ACC with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in gray) by pressing the **RES/+** button.

When you turn the ACC off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the driver information interface in gray.

When pressing the **RES/+** button, the ACC is activated with displayed speed.

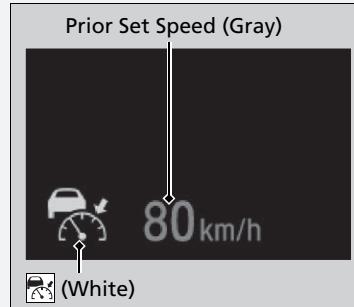
Then, when the indicator (white) is displayed and you press the **RES/+** button during the prior set speed (in gray) is not displayed, the current vehicle speed is set as same as the condition of operating the **SET/-** button.

## ■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface, and the  indicator (White) will come on when ACC is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA or CMBS is activated.
- When the VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- The vehicle is loaded heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- When passing through an a dark place, such as tunnel.
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).

### » To Cancel



The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC has been turned off using the  button. Press the  button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

If the vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h, you cannot resume.

## Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

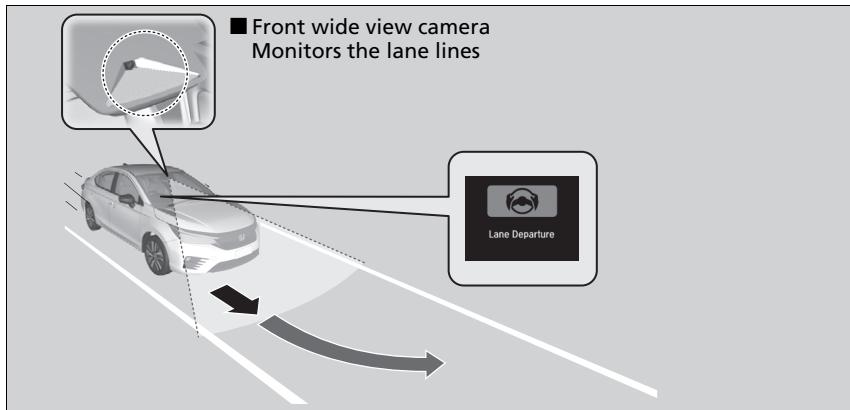
Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

### ■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.

### ■ Tactile, audible and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, audible and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



### ▶Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

#### **Important Safety Reminders**

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not a substitute for your vehicle control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreens and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.

It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▶ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 292

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

▶ **LKAS Conditions and Limitations** P. 281

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

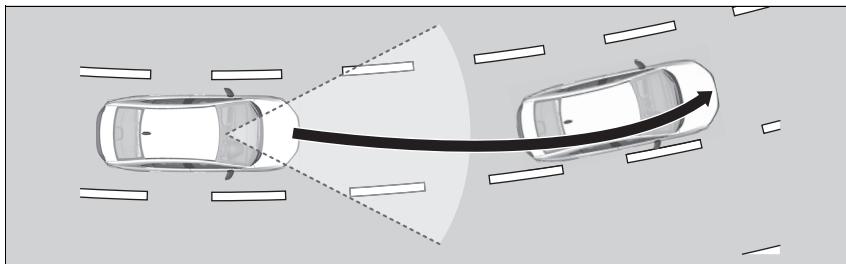
If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

#### »Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

## Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.

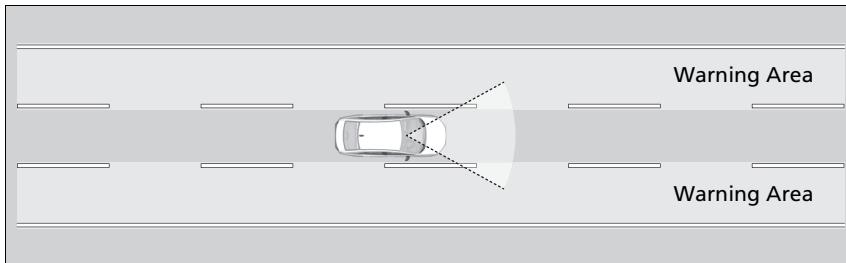


## Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

## Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.

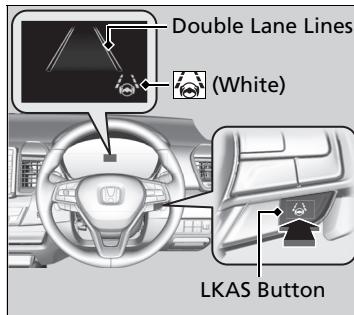


## When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The wipers are not in high speed operation.

## How to activate the system



### 1. Press the LKAS button.

- The double lane lines and lane keeping assist system (LKAS) indicator (white) appear on the driver information interface.

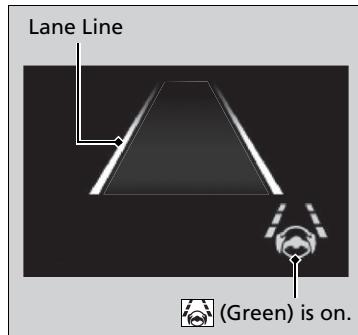
The system is ready to use.

## When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts toward either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

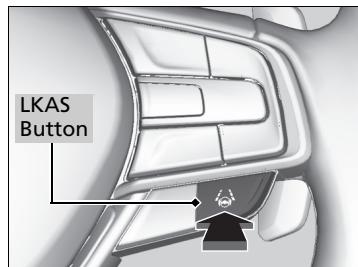
Be sure to keep the following below to activate the system properly;

- Always keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not touch the camera lens.
- Do not attach a sticker to the area around the camera.



2. Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
  - ▶ The double lane lines change to solid ones once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

## To Cancel



Press the LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you turn the power system off, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

**Double Lane Lines**

When the LKAS is suspended,  
the lane lines on the driver  
information interface change  
to double lane lines, and the  
beeper sounds (if activated).

**■ The system operation is suspended if you:**

- Set the wipers to high speed.  
► Turning the wipers off or setting it to **LO** resumes the LKAS.
- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 64 km/h or less.  
► Increasing the vehicle speed to about 72 km/h or more resumes the LKAS.
- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.

►The system operation is suspended if you:

You can change the setting for the LKAS.  
LKAS suspended beep on and off can be selected.

► **Settings** P. 123

**■ The LKAS may automatically be suspended when:**

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned quickly.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 180 km/h.
- The Road Departure Mitigation System is activated.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

**■ The LKAS may automatically be cancelled when:**

In the following cases, double lane lines may appear on the screen, the beeper may sound, and the LKAS may automatically be cancelled:

- The camera temperature gets extremely high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreens, is dirty.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.

## ■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations

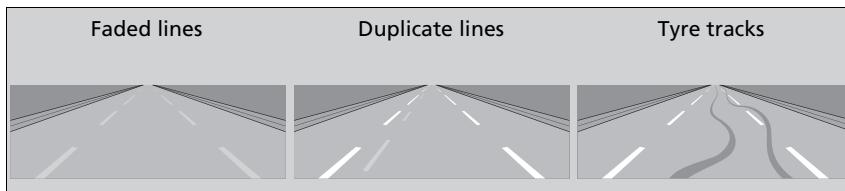
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of a lane under certain conditions, including the following:

### ■ Environmental conditions

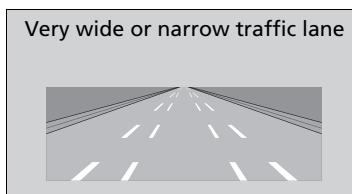
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white lines (or yellow lines).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

## ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.

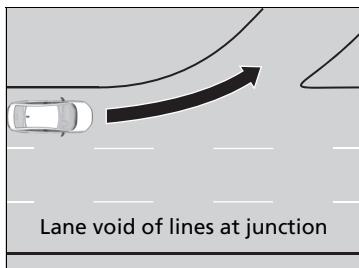


- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.



- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

- Driving on roads with double lane line.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White lines (or yellow lines) are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



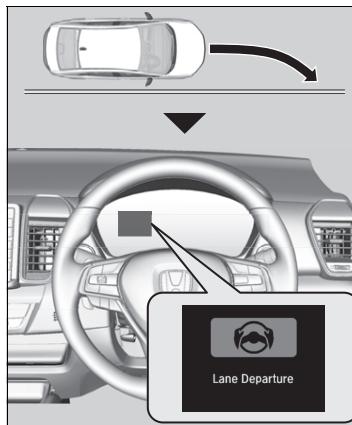
## ■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- Abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong size, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre\*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.

## Road Departure Mitigation System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

### How the System Works



The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

**Settings** P. 123

As a visual alert, the **Lane Departure** message appears on the driver information interface.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

### ▶▶Road Departure Mitigation System

#### Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations.

Over-reliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The Road Departure Mitigation system is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

**Front Wide View Camera** P. 292

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

**Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations** P. 289



Road Departure  
Mitigation  
Temporarily OFF.



Road Departure  
Mitigation Operation  
Resumed.

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the warning sound is given only.

After a few minutes, the message to the left is displayed and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

#### ▶Road Departure Mitigation System

There are times when you may not notice Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

If LKAS is off and you have selected **Early** from the customized options using the driver information interface, the message below will appear in case the system determines a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings.

■ **Settings** P. 123



Road Departure  
Mitigation Activated

## ■ How the System Activates

The system becomes ready to start searching for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The lane markings is white (yellow).
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The wipers are not in high speed operation.
- The vehicle is not accelerating or braking, and the steering wheel is not being turned.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking or steering.

## » How the System Activates

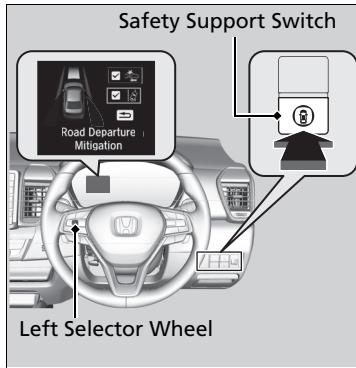
The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) comes and stays on.

### ⇒ Indicators P. 92

Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

## Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off



When you turn the Road Departure Mitigation system on and off, do the following.

1. Press the safety support switch.
2. Roll the left selector wheel to the  symbol and push it.
  - The message appears on the driver information interface when the system becomes on or off.
  - A tick appears in the box and the colour of the  symbol changes green when the system is on. The tick disappears and the colour of the  symbol changes gray when the system is off.

### Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

You can also select the safety support content from the driver information interface.

#### Driver Information Interface P. 111

When you have selected **Warning Only** from the customized options using the driver information interface, the system does not operate the steering wheel and braking.

#### Settings P. 123

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, safety support indicators (amber) and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator\* may come on after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

### ■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white lines (or yellow lines).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines, the road surface, or oncoming vehicles may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.

## ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- Passing through a junction.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- White lines (or yellow lines) are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.

## ■ Vehicle conditions

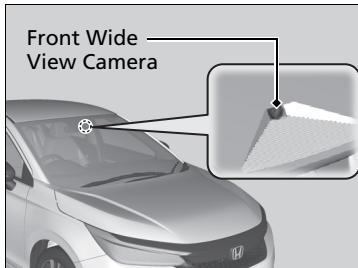
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- Abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong size, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre\*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.

\* Not available on all models

## Front Wide View Camera

The camera, used in systems such as Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Road Departure Mitigation System, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

### ■ Camera Location and Handling Tips



This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

### ▶Front Wide View Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreens, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.

Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreens within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreens with a genuine Honda replacement windscreens. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreens may also cause the system to operate abnormally.

After replacing the windscreens, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windscreens and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

## »Front Wide View Camera

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windscreen** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windscreen. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windscreen and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## Brake System

### Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.



#### To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has battery, no matter which position the power mode is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

- ▶ The indicator in the switch comes on.
- ▶ The parking brake indicator (red) comes on.

#### To release

The power mode must be in ON in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.
  - ▶ The indicator in the switch goes off.
  - ▶ The parking brake indicator (red) goes off.



Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle to start slowly and smoothly when facing down hill on steep hills.

### Braking

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirring sound from the engine compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

### Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the 12-volt battery goes dead.

#### If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead P. 393

**If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the electric servo brake system until the vehicle come to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.**

## ■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

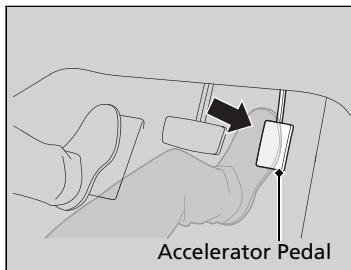
- The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake indicator (red) is on.

### Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature P. 296

## ■ To release automatically

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.

Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.



Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

- The indicator in the switch goes off.
- The parking brake indicator (red) goes off.

You can release the parking brake automatically when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The power system is on.
- The transmission is not in **P** or **N**.

## » Parking Brake

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and the automatic brake hold is applied.
- When the power system is turned off while automatic brake hold is applied.
- When there is a problem with the automatic brake hold system.

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

## ■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode is in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

1. Put the transmission into **P**.
2. Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up the electric parking brake switch.
  - Check that the parking brake indicator (red) has come on.
3. Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within 3 seconds pull up and hold the switch again.
4. When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
  - Two beeps indicates that the feature has been activated.
  - One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
  - When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn off the engine.
  - To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake indicator (red) is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature for when having your vehicle towed. You can follow the procedure explained below.

1. Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and then within 2 seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.
  - Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
  - Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off the automatic brake hold system.
  - To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake indicator (red) is on.

## ▶Parking Brake

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Power system indicator
- Brake system indicator
- VSA system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.

When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.

Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyor-type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

## Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

☒ **Brake Assist System** P. 301

☒ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 300

### » Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

Applying constant pressure to the brakes while going down a long hill can cause the brakes to heat up, resulting in a loss of stopping power. Therefore, when descending a long hill, release the accelerator pedal and allow regenerative braking to slow the vehicle down. To adjust the rate of deceleration, use the deceleration paddle selector. When the high voltage battery has fully recharged, regenerative braking may not be possible.

☒ **POWER/CHARGE Gauge** P. 109

☒ **Deceleration Paddle Selector\*** P. 224

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Automatic Brake Hold

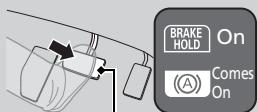
Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

### ■ Turning on the system



Automatic Brake Hold Button

### ■ Activating the system



Brake Pedal

### ■ Cancelling the system



Accelerator Pedal

Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the power system. Press the automatic brake hold button.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The transmission must be in **D** or **N**.

- The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.
- Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

Depress the accelerator pedal while the transmission must be in **D** or **R**. The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.

- The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

## ■ Automatic Brake Hold

### ⚠ WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

### ⚠ WARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in **P** and applying the parking brake.

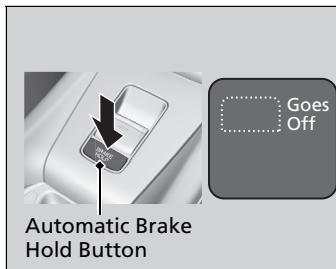
### ■ The system automatically cancels when:

- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and put the transmission into **P** or **R**.

### ■ The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The power system is turned off.
- **Brake Hold System Problem. Apply Brake When Stopped.** appears on the driver information interface.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

### ■ Turning off the automatic brake hold system



While the system is on, press the automatic brake hold button again.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

If you want to turn off automatic brake hold while the system is in operation, press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.

### » Automatic Brake Hold

While the system is activated, you can turn off the power system or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

#### » When Stopped P. 303

Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the power system is off.

### » Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

## Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

### ■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you can.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

### ■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:

- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

### ■ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

#### NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the wrong size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.

While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:

- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:

- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the power system has been turned on and while the vehicle accelerates.

- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

## Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

### ■ Brake assist system operation

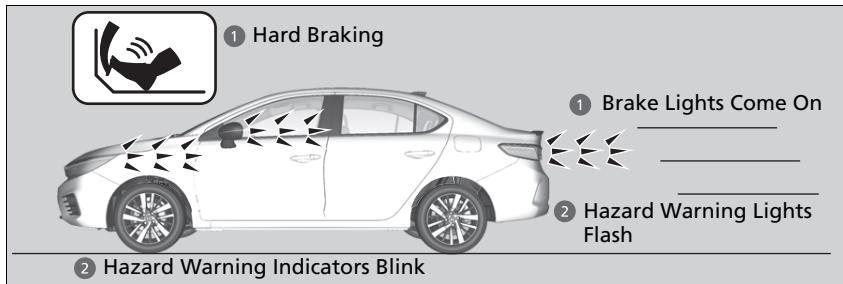
Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

## Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

### ■ When the system activates:



The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

### ▶Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

## When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
3. Change the shift position to **[P]**.
4. Turn off the power system.
  - The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off in about 30 seconds.

Always set the parking brake, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

»Parking Your Vehicle

### ⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **[P]** is shown on the shift position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.  
Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

### NOTICE

The following can damage the driveline:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Changing to **[P]** before the vehicle stops completely.

When facing uphill, do not hold the vehicle by depressing the accelerator pedal.  
Doing so may cause the power system to overheat and fail.

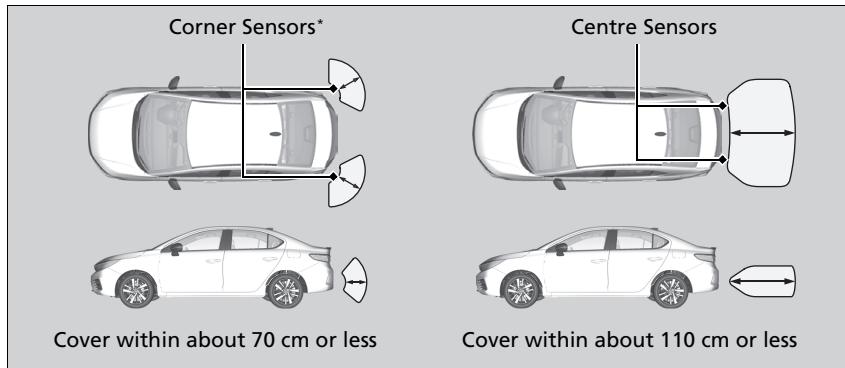
☒Parking Your Vehicle

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

## Parking Sensor System\*

The rear corner\* and centre sensors monitor obstacles behind your vehicle, and the beeper and driver information interface you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

### ■ The sensor location and range



#### Models without parking sensor system button

The system activates when the transmission is in **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

#### ▶Parking Sensor System\*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

The system may not sense:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

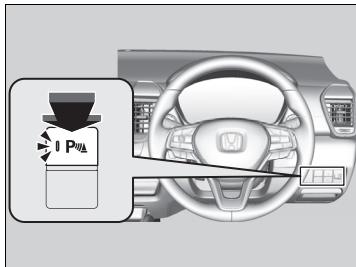
#### Models with parking sensor system button

When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

\* Not available on all models

Models with parking sensor system button

## Parking Sensor System On and Off



With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The rear centre and corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

## When the Distance Between Your Vehicle and Obstacles Becomes Shorter

Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Driver information interface
	Corner Sensors*	Centre Sensors		
Moderate	—	About 60-110 cm	Blinks in Yellow <sup>*1</sup>	
Short	About 45-70 cm	About 45-60 cm	Blinks in Amber	 <p>Approaching Object</p> <p>Indicators light up where the sensor detects an obstacle</p>
Very short	About 35-45 cm	About 35-45 cm		
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 35 cm or less	Blinks in Red	

\*1:At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

Models with parking sensor system button

## Turning off All Rear Sensors

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
2. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.
3. Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
4. Press the button again. The indicator in the button goes off.  
► The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off.

To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

### Turning off All Rear Sensors

When you set the shift position to **R**, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

## Fuel Information

### ■ Fuel recommendation

Thai models

**Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher**

Use of lower octane petrol/gasohol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Except Thai models

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher**

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

### ■ Fuel tank capacity: 40 L

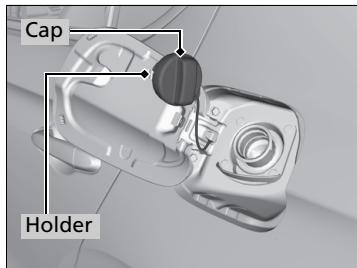
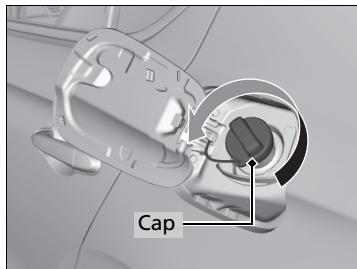
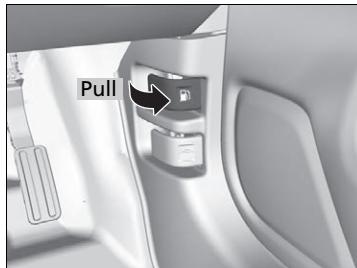
» Fuel Information

#### NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detimental effects on the engine and other systems

## How to Refuel



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn the power system off.
3. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.  
► The fuel fill door opens.
4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.
5. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
6. Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.  
► When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
7. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.  
► Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

## ▶ How to Refuel

### **WARNING**

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Turn the power system off, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

## Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO<sub>2</sub> emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

### Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult your warranty booklet.

#### ► Maintenance Schedule P. 317

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.  
► Recommended Engine Oil P. 324
- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

#### ► Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

$$\frac{100}{\text{Kilometres driven}} \times \frac{\text{Litres of fuel}}{\text{Litres of fuel}} = \frac{\text{Kilometres driven}}{\text{Kilometres per Litre}} = \text{L per 100 km}$$



# Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



## **Before Performing Maintenance**

Inspection and Maintenance .....	314
Safety When Performing Maintenance ..	315
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance	
Service .....	316

## **Maintenance Schedule .....**

### **Maintenance Under the Bonnet**

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet ..	322
Opening the Bonnet .....	323
Recommended Engine Oil .....	324
Oil Check .....	325
Adding Engine Oil .....	326

## Cooling System.....

Transmission Fluid.....	329
Brake Fluid.....	329
Refilling Window Washer Fluid.....	330
Fuel Filter .....	331

## **Replacing Light Bulbs .....**

## **Checking and Maintaining Wiper**

<b>Blades .....</b>	342
---------------------	-----

## **Checking and Maintaining Tyres**

Checking Tyres .....	344
Wear Indicators.....	346
Tyre Service Life .....	346

## Tyre and Wheel Replacement.....

Tyre Rotation .....	348
---------------------	-----

## **12-Volt Battery .....**

## **Remote Transmitter Care**

Replacing the Button Battery .....	352
------------------------------------	-----

## **Climate Control System Maintenance ..**

## **Cleaning**

Interior Care .....	355
---------------------	-----

Exterior Care.....	357
--------------------	-----

## **Accessories and Modifications .....**

## Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the Service Book that came with your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

☒ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 317

### Types of Inspection and Maintenance

#### ■ Routine inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

#### ■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.  
☒ **Brake Fluid** P. 329
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.  
☒ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 344
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.  
☒ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 332
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.  
☒ **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 342

## Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

### Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the 12-volt battery, all High Voltage system, and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
  - Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the 12-volt battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  - Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

### Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  - Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the power system is turned off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  - Make sure to let the power system including the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  - Do not activate the power system unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts. When the power mode is on, the engine can automatically start, or the radiator fan may start operating without the engine running.
- Do not touch the high-voltage battery and wiring (orange).

### ►►Safety When Performing Maintenance

#### ⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

## Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

# Maintenance Schedule

If your vehicle comes with the Service Book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the Service Book, refer to the following maintenance schedule.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

## Except South African models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000 months	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
Replace engine oil	Normal							Every 10,000 km or 1 year			
	Severe							Every 5,000 km or 6 months			
Replace engine oil filter	Normal							Every 20,000 km or 2 years			
	Severe							Every 10,000 km or 1 year			
Replace air cleaner element								Every 20,000 km <sup>*2</sup>			
								Every 30,000 km <sup>*3</sup>			
Inspect valve clearance <sup>*1</sup>								Every 120,000 km			

\*1:Sensory Method: Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.

\*2:Indian models

\*3:Except Indian models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000 months	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
Replace spark plugs											Every 100,000 km
Replace engine coolant											At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years
Replace transmission fluid* <sup>1</sup>					•				•		
Replace transmission fluid* <sup>2</sup>	Normal										Every 150,000 km or 6 years
	Severe										Every 75,000 km or 3 years
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes											Every 10,000 km or 1 year
Replace fuel filter* <sup>3</sup>	Normal										Every 150,000 km* <sup>1</sup> Every 180,000 km* <sup>2</sup>
	Severe										Every 70,000 km* <sup>1</sup> Every 110,000 km* <sup>2</sup>
Replace brake fluid											Every 3 years
Check expiry date for tyre repair kit bottle (If equipped)											Every year
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)											Every 10,000 km

\*1:Indian models

\*2:Except Indian models

\*3:It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000 months	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120

**Visually inspect the following items:**

Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots Suspension components Driveshaft boots	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA)										
All fluid levels and condition of fluid										
Exhaust system										
Fuel lines and connections										

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and oil filter	A, B, C, D and E
Transmission fluid	B, D

#### ☒Maintenance Schedule

The condition is considered as severe when you drive:

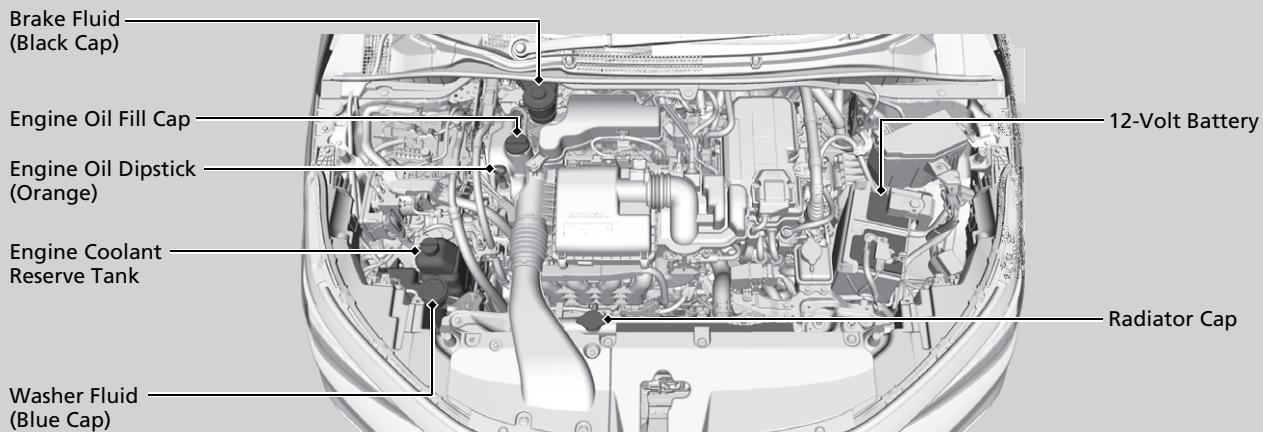
- A. less than 8 km, or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures per trip.
- B. In extremely hot temperature above 35°C.
- C. With extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go.
- D. With a loaded roof rack, or in mountains.
- E. On muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

## Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)

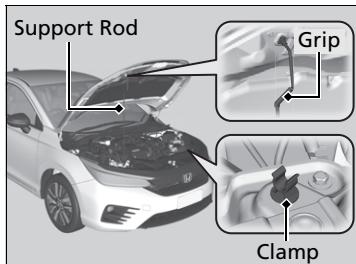
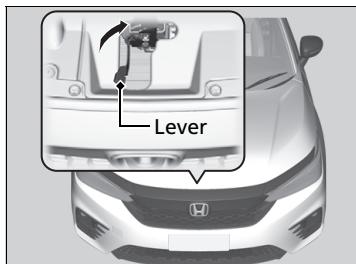
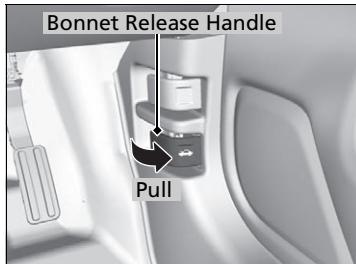
Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
<b>20,000 km</b> (or 12 Mo.)		
<b>40,000 km</b> (or 24 Mo.)		
<b>60,000 km</b> (or 36 Mo.)		
<b>80,000 km</b> (or 48 Mo.)		
<b>100,000 km</b> (or 60 Mo.)		
<b>120,000 km</b> (or 72 Mo.)		
<b>140,000 km</b> (or 84 Mo.)		
<b>160,000 km</b> (or 96 Mo.)		
<b>180,000 km</b> (or 108 Mo.)		
<b>200,000 km</b> (or 120 Mo.)		

## Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet



## Opening the Bonnet



- Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
- Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.  
► The bonnet will pop up slightly.
- Pull up the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.
- Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

### » Opening the Bonnet

#### NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

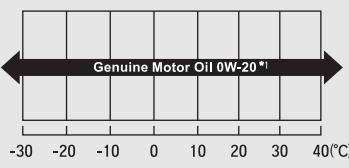
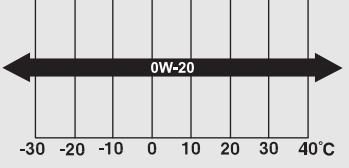
When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

## Recommended Engine Oil

Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable type and viscosity (for the ambient temperature) as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Honda Genuine Motor Oil</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oil</li><li>ACEA A5/B5</li></ul>
	

\*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

### Recommended Engine Oil

#### Engine Oil Additives

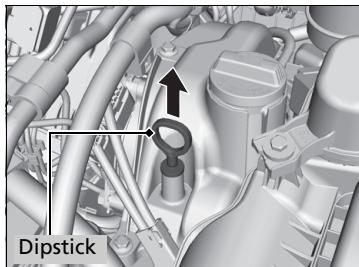
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

## Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.

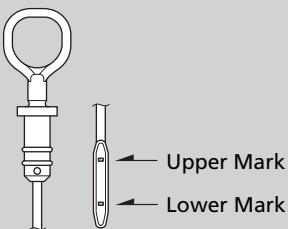
Park the vehicle on level ground.

Turn off the power system. You can check the oil level without the engine having run beforehand. If the engine has been running, wait approximately three minutes before you check the oil.



1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

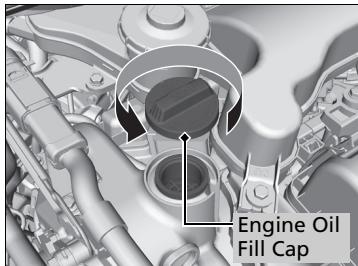
4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.



### ► Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

## Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

### ▶Adding Engine Oil

#### NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

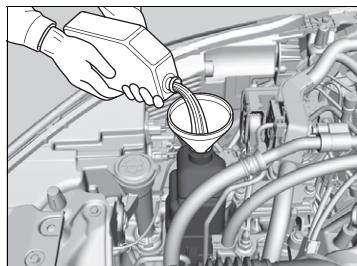
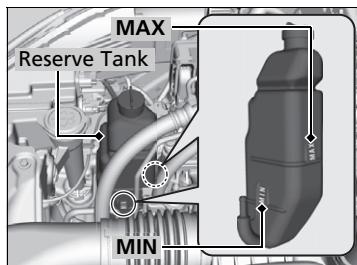
# Cooling System

## Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

### Reserve Tank



- 1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
- 2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.**
  - If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
- 3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.**

## ► Cooling System

### WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

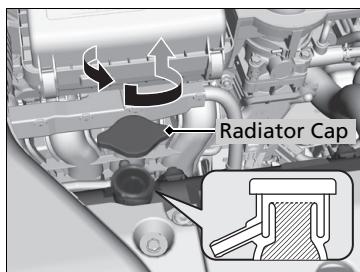
### NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

## Radiator



- 1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

## Radiator

### NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

## Transmission Fluid

### Specified fluid: Honda ATF DW-1

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.

Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change transmission fluid.

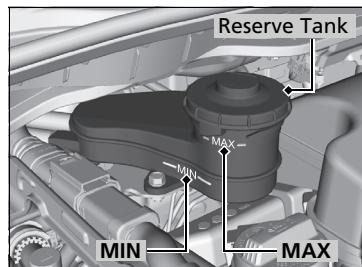
▣ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 317

Do not attempt to check or change the transmission fluid yourself.

## Brake Fluid

### Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

#### ■ Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

### » Transmission Fluid

#### NOTICE

**Do not mix Honda ATF DW-1 with other transmission fluids.**

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda ATF DW-1 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda ATF DW-1 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

### » Brake Fluid

#### NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

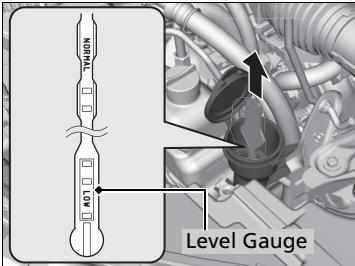
We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

## Refilling Window Washer Fluid

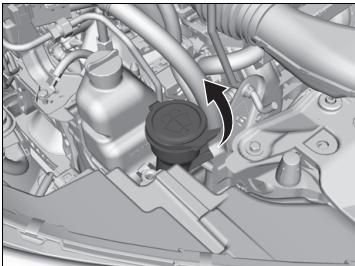
### Models with washer fluid level gauge

Check the amount of window washer fluid using the washer fluid level gauge.



### Models without washer fluid level gauge

Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.



### All models

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

### ►►Refilling Window Washer Fluid

#### NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale build up.

## Fuel Filter

Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

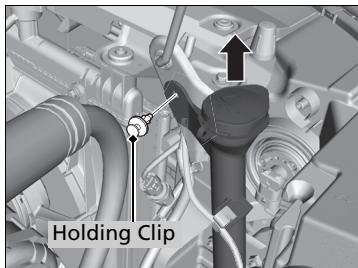
## Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

<b>High beam headlight:</b>	<b>60 W (HB3 for halogen bulb type)*</b>
	<b>LED type*</b>
<b>Low beam headlight:</b>	<b>55 W (H7 for halogen bulb type)*</b>
	<b>LED type*</b>

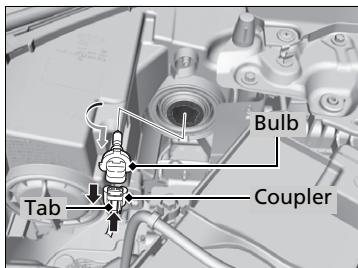
### High Beam Headlights

#### Models with halogen headlights



#### Driver side

1. Remove the holding clip using a flat-tip screwdriver, then remove the upper part of the window washer reserve tank.



#### Both sides

2. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
3. Rotate the old bulb anticlockwise to remove.
4. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
5. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

#### Headlight Bulbs

##### NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the boot, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

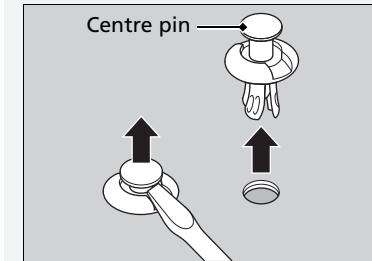
When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

#### Models with LED headlights

High beam and low beam headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

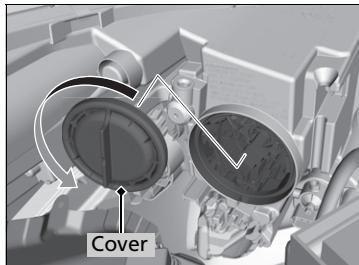
#### Holding clip

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the centre pin to remove the clip.

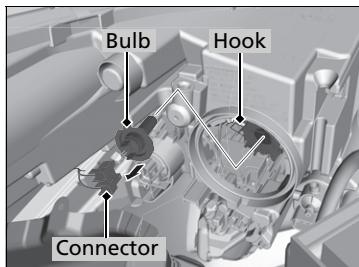


## Low Beam Headlights

Models with halogen headlights



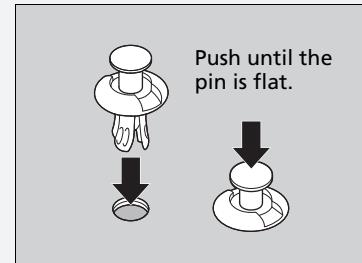
1. Rotate the cover anticlockwise to remove.



2. Unhook the hook, and pull out the connector.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert the new bulb.
4. Put the connector back into the bulb.

### Headlight Bulbs

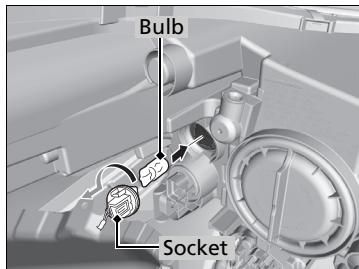
Insert the clip with the centre pin raised, and push until it is flat.



## Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Front Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)\***  
**LED type\***



1. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

### Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

**Models with LED front turn signal lights**

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Position/Daytime Running Lights

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Fog Lights\*

Fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

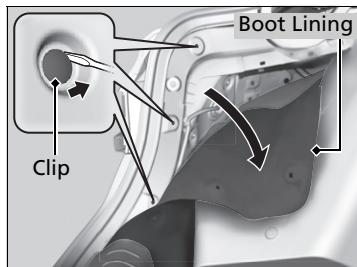
## Brake/Taillight, Rear Side Marker Light and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

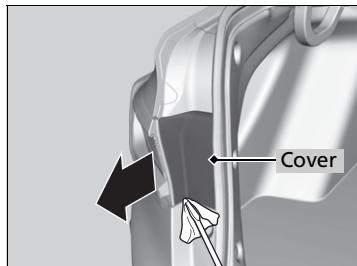
**Brake/Taillight:** LED Type

**Rear Side Marker Light:** LED Type

**Rear Turn Signal Light:** 21W (Amber)



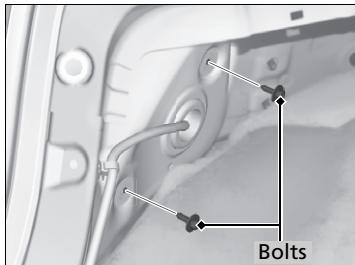
1. Remove the holding clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, then pull the lining back.



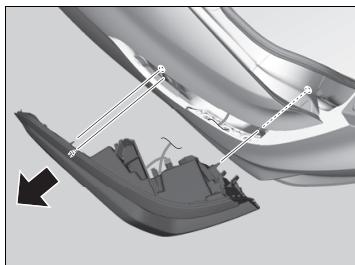
2. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

### Brake/Taillight, Rear Side Marker Light and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

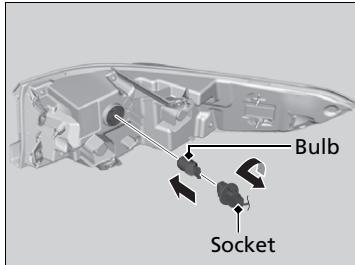
Brake/taillights, rear side marker lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.



3. Use a Phillips-head screwdriver or socket to remove the bolts.



4. Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.



5. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.

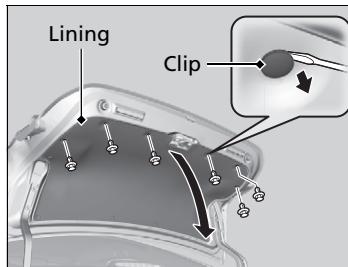
6. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

## Back-Up Light and Taillight Bulbs

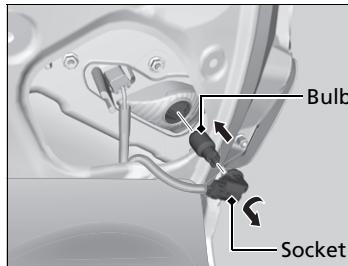
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Back-Up Light: 16 W**

**Taillight: LED Type**



1. Remove the holding clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, then pull the lining back.



2. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

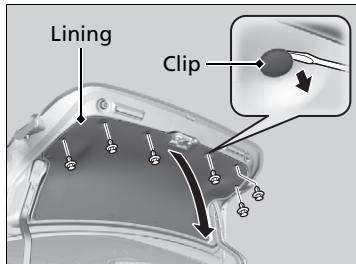
### » Back-Up Light and Taillight Bulbs

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

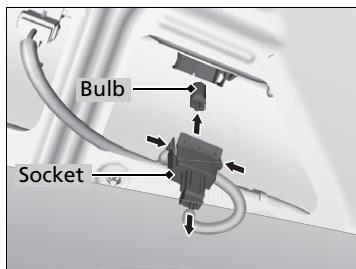
## Rear Licence Plate Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Rear Licence Plate Light: 5 W**



1. Remove the holding clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, then pull the lining back.



2. Remove the licence plate light assembly by squeezing the tabs on both sides of the socket.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

## High-Mount Brake Light

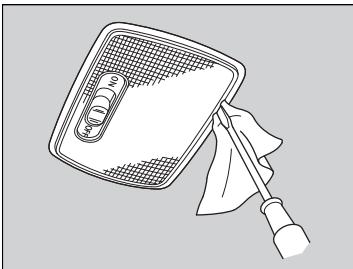
High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Other Light Bulbs

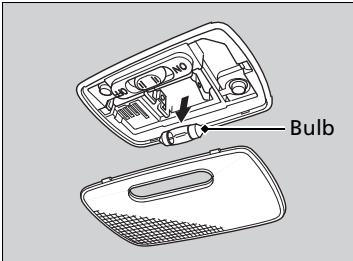
### Ceiling Light Bulb \*

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Ceiling Light: 8 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

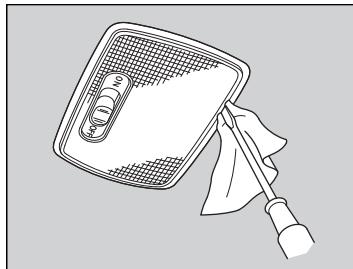


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

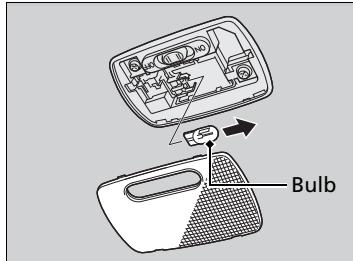
### Ceiling Light Bulb \*

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Ceiling Light: 8 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

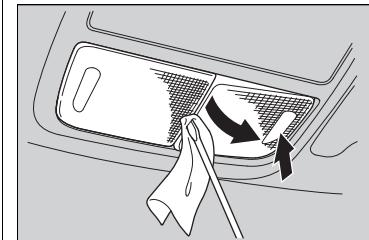


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

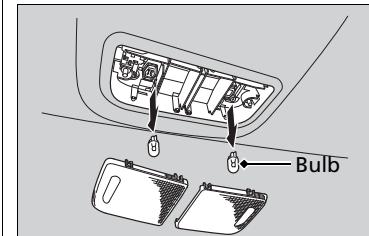
### Map Light Bulbs \*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Map Light: 8 W**



1. Push on the lens of the opposite side you are replacing.
2. Pry on the edge between the lenses using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

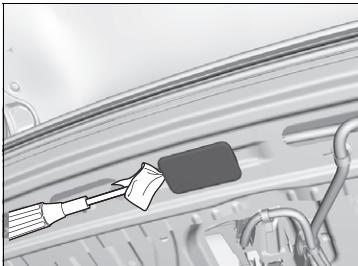


3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

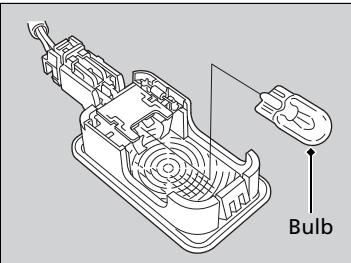
## ■ Boot Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Boot Light: 5 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

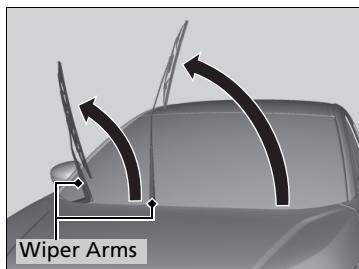


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

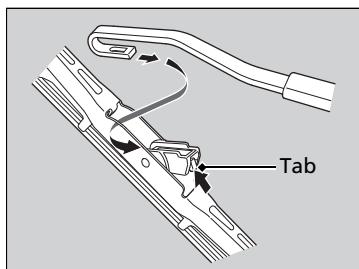
## Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks, become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

## Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.

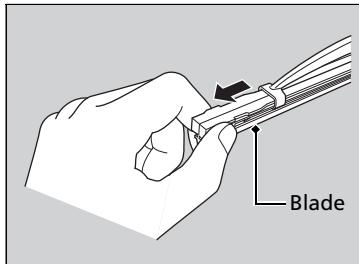


2. Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

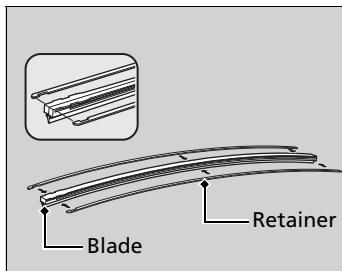
### » Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber

#### NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreens, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreens.



- 3.** Slide the wiper blade out of the holder by pulling the tabbed end out.



- 4.** Remove the retainers from the wiper blade that has been removed, and mount to a new wiper blade.

► Correctly align the wiper blade protrusion and the retainer grooves.

- 5.** Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.

► The tab on the holder should fit in the indent of the wiper blade.

- 6.** Slide the holder onto the wiper arm securely.

- 7.** Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

## Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

### ■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare\*. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10-20 kPa (0.1-0.2 bar, 1-2 psi) per month.

### » Checking Tyres

## ⚠ WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30-40 kPa (0.3-0.4 bar, 4-6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

### Models with deflation warning system

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

» **Deflation Warning System\*** P. 238

## ■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.

Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.  
☒ **Wear Indicators** P. 346
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

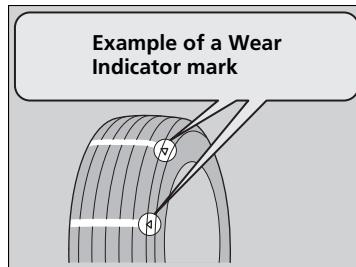
## » Checking Tyres

### High speed driving

We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (over 160 km/h), adjust the cold tyre pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat build up and sudden tyre failure.

Tyre Size	185/55R16 87H
Pressure	Front: 260 kPa (2.6 bar, 38 psi)
	Rear: 240 kPa (2.4 bar, 35 psi)

## Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre.  
**Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.**

## Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare\*, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

## Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

» Tyre and Wheel Replacement

### ⚠ WARNING

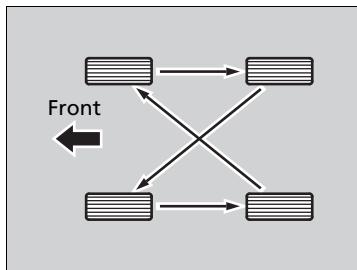
Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

## Tyre Rotation

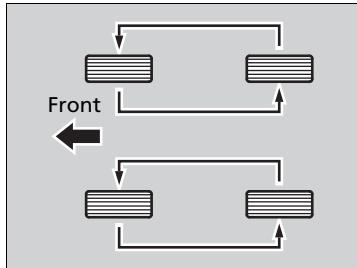
Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

### ■ Tyres without rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

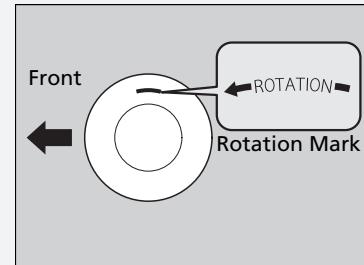
### ■ Tyres with rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

### ►Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



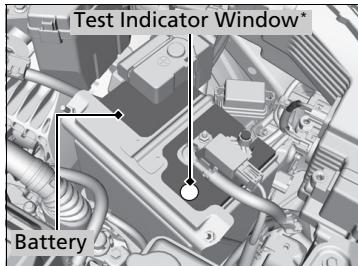
When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

#### Models with deflation warning system

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

► **Deflation Warning System\*** P. 238

## Checking the 12-Volt Battery



### Models with test indicator window on the battery

Check the battery condition monthly. Look at the test indicator window and check the terminals for corrosion.

The battery condition is monitored by the sensor on the negative terminal. If there is a problem with the sensor, the warning message on driver information interface will let you know. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

### Models without test indicator window on the battery

The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The clock resets.

Clock P. 134

\* Not available on all models

### »12-Volt Battery

## WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

## WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

**KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN**

## Charging the 12-Volt Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

### 12-Volt Battery

#### Emergency Procedures

Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications. Consult a dealer for more information.

#### Models with test indicator window on the battery

The test indicator's colour information is on the battery.

The location of the test indicator window may vary depending on the model.

## » 12-Volt Battery

The adaptive cruise control (ACC)\* (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, safety support\* indicators (amber) and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator\* may come on after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

\* Not available on all models

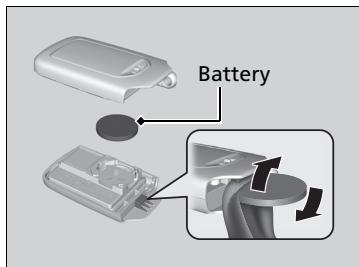
## Replacing the Button Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



**Battery type: CR2032**

- 1.** Remove the built-in key.
  
- 2.** Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
  - ▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
  - ▶ Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.
  
- 3.** Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



» Replacing the Button Battery

### ⚠ WARNING

#### CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed. Keep new and used batteries away from children.

If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

#### NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

## Dust and Pollen Filter

### When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

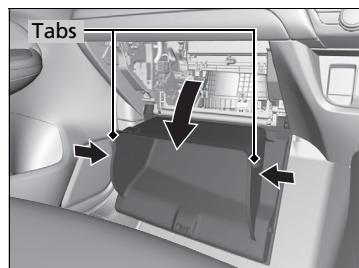
Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

► **Maintenance Schedule** P. 317

### How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.

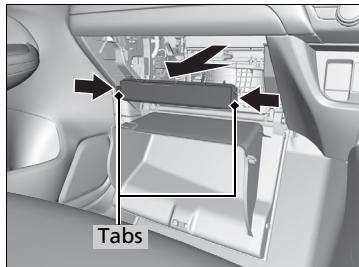


2. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
3. Pivot the glove box out of the way.

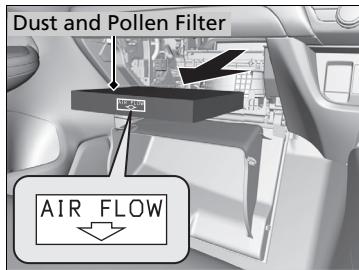
### Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.



4. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.



5. Remove the filter from the case.
6. Install a new filter in the case.
  - Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

#### »Dust and Pollen Filter

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

## Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.

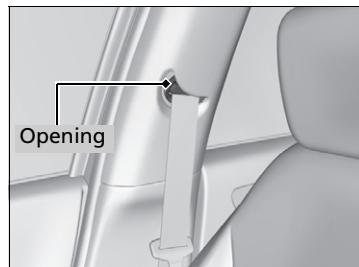
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.

Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

### Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.

Let the belts air dry. Wipe the openings of the seat belt anchorages using a clean cloth.



### »Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle.

Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches.

Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.

Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

## Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

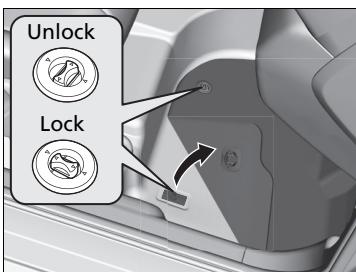
## Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

### Models with front wide view camera

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of the front wide view camera.

## Floor Mats\*



The driver's floor mat hooks over the floor anchors, which keep the mat from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.

**Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.**

## Maintaining Genuine Leather\*

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

## Maintaining Genuine Leather\*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discolouration or stains.

## Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

### ■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

### ■ Using an Automated Car Wash

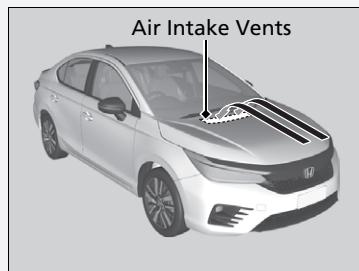
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.

### ■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

#### »Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



## ■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

## ■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

## ■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

## ■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

## ■ Applying Wax

### NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

## ■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

## ■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

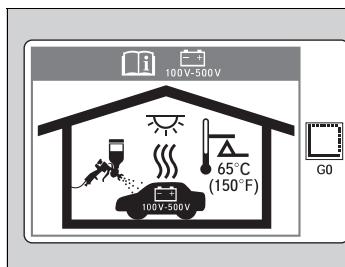
The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

## ■ Painting the Vehicle

### Indian, Malaysian and African models



High temperature may damage the high-voltage battery used to power the electricmotor.

When painting the vehicle in a heated paint booth, make sure the temperature does not exceed 65°C.

### Thai, Malaysian and Latin American models

Refer to the colour code label and the temperature notice label affixed to the front passenger's doorjamb before painting the vehicle.

## Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

 **Fuses** P. 406

»Accessories and Modifications

### **WARNING**

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

### **WARNING**

Use of improperly designed, engineered or manufactured high-voltage battery assemblies could cause a fire in your vehicle.

A vehicle fire could result in a crash or injury.

Only use a genuine Honda high-voltage battery assembly, or its equivalent, in your vehicle.

## Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair your vehicle's high-voltage hybrid power system or otherwise modify vehicle electrical systems. Disassembling or modifying electrical equipment can result in a crash or a fire.

If you ever need to replace your vehicle's high-voltage battery assembly outside of warranty coverage, we highly recommend that you only use a genuine Honda high-voltage battery assembly. Genuine Honda high-voltage battery assemblies are designed to work with your vehicle's hybrid power system and have been designed, engineered and manufactured to avoid overcharging situations. Non-genuine high-voltage battery assemblies may not have been similarly designed, engineered and manufactured, and installation of such assemblies could result in overcharging, fires, loss of power, or other conditions that may increase the likelihood of a crash or injury.

### ▶▶ Accessories and Modifications

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.



# Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

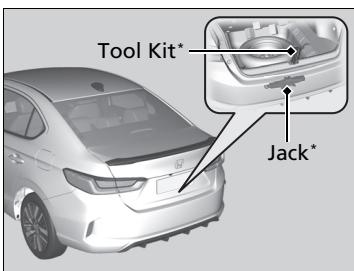
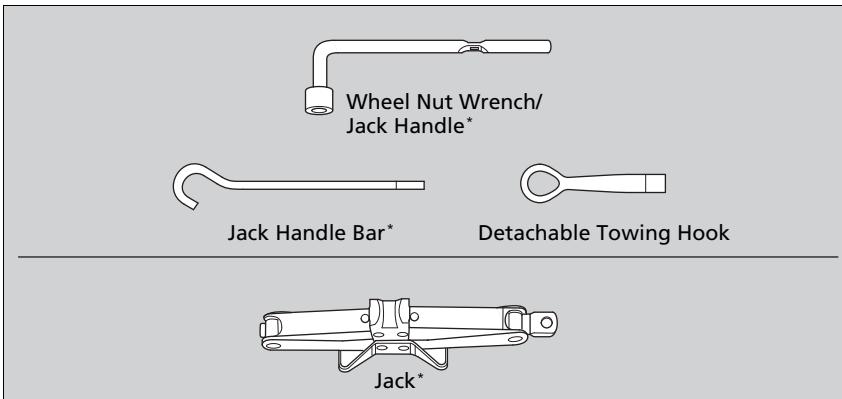
<b>Tools</b>	
Types of Tools.....	364
<b>If a Tyre Goes Flat</b>	
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre * ....	365
Changing a Flat Tyre * .....	379
<b>Models with tyre repair kit</b>	
<b>Handling of the Jack</b> .....	389
<b>Power System Won't Start</b>	
Checking the Procedure .....	390
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak ..	391
Emergency Power System Off.....	392
<b>If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead</b>	
Jump Starting Procedure .....	393

<b>Shift Lever Does Not Move.....</b>	396
<b>Overheating</b>	
How to Handle Overheating.....	397
<b>Indicator, Coming On/Blinking</b>	
If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears...399	
If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On .....	400
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks .....	401
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On .....	402

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on ...403	
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On.....404	
<b>Indian, Bhutanese, Nepalese and Sri Lankan models</b>	
If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks ..405	
<b>Fuses</b>	
Fuse Locations .....	406
Inspecting and Changing Fuses.....	417
<b>Emergency Towing</b> .....	418

\* Not available on all models

## Types of Tools



### Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the boot.

## Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre\*

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

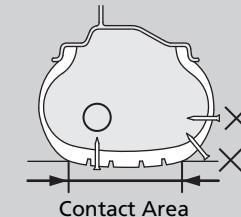
If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then stop in a safe place.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, and non-slippery ground and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into **P**.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

### Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre\*

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistant to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm (3/16 inch).
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.



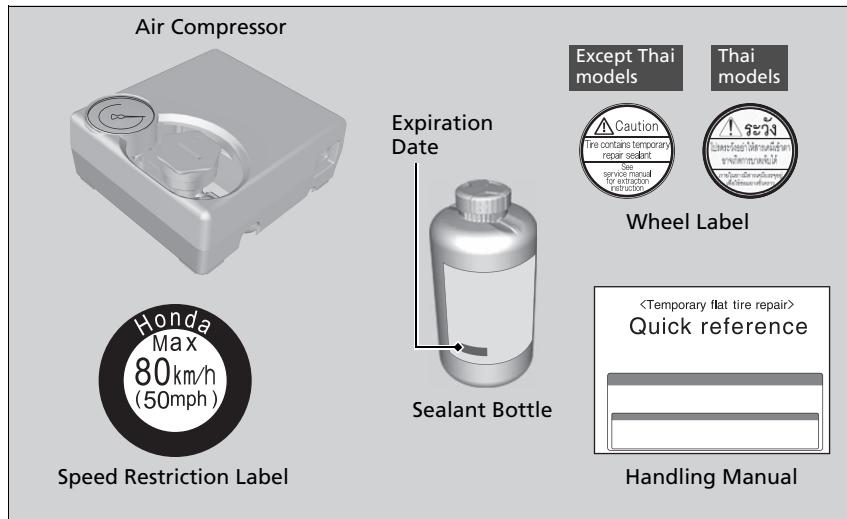
When the puncture is:	Kit Use
Smaller than 4 mm (3/16 inch)	Yes
Larger than 4 mm (3/16 inch)	No

- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

\* Not available on all models

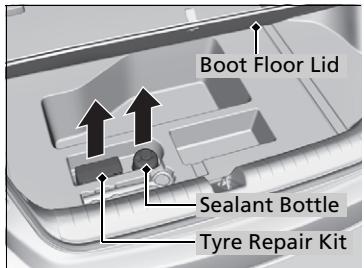
## ■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre



### ► Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

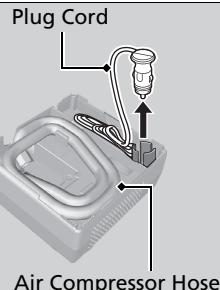
Speed restriction label and wheel label are applied to the side of temporary tyre repair kit.

When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.

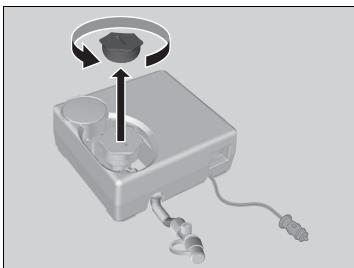


1. Pull the strap on the boot floor lid and open the lid.
2. Take the kit and sealant bottle out of the case.
3. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

## Injecting Sealant and Air



1. Take the compressor hose and plug cord out of the back of the air compressor.



2. Remove the compressor cap from the air compressor.

### Injecting Sealant and Air

## WARNING

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

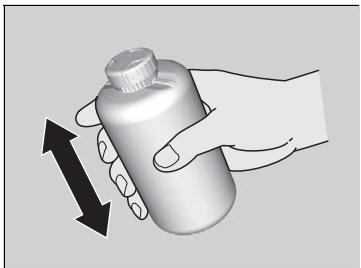
If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

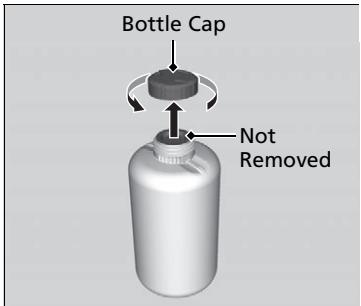
Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.

In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it by keeping the bottle in the passenger compartment before using.

The sealant can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe away any spills immediately.



**3.** Shake the bottle well.



**4.** Remove the bottle cap.

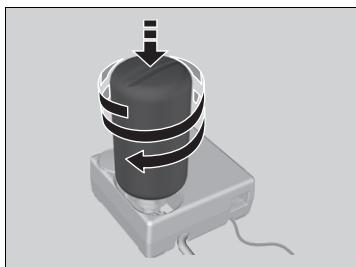
► Do not remove the sealed cover.

#### » Injecting Sealant and Air

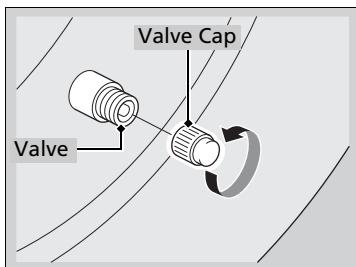
Do not remove the empty bottle after injecting the sealant.

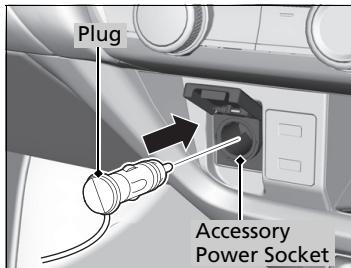
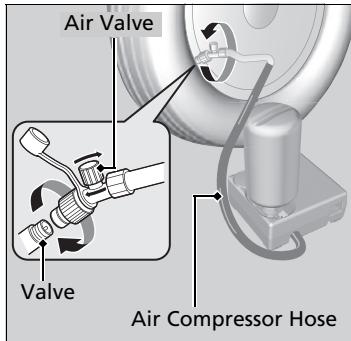
See a Honda dealer for a replacement of sealant bottle and proper disposal of the empty bottle.

5. Screw the sealed bottle onto the air compressor.  
► Screw the bottle tightly so that it does not become loose.



6. Unscrew the valve cap.





**7.** Screw the compressor hose onto the tyre valve.

- Make sure the exhaust valve is closed and the air compressor is turned off.

**8.** Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.

► **Accessory Power Sockets** P. 198

**9.** Turn on the vehicle's power system.

► **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 88

#### » Injecting Sealant and Air

## ⚠ WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

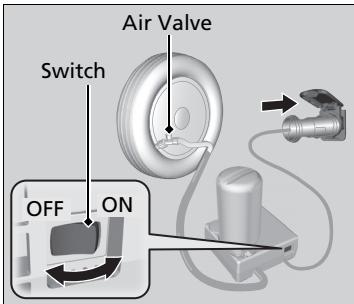
Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death.  
Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Turn the air compressor off when connecting the compressor hose.

You hear a motor sound coming from the activated air compressor. This is normal.

If the specified air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

If you want to measure the air pressure using a gauge, turn the air compressor off first.



10. Turn on the air compressor and inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
  - The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.
  - Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.
11. After the air pressure reaches to specified pressure, turn off the compressor.
  - Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.
  - If overinflated, release the air by turning the exhaust valve. Be careful not to spill any sealant.
12. Unplug the electric plug from the accessory power socket.
13. Unscrew the compressor hose from the tyre valve. Install the hose cap.
  - Be careful not to spill any sealant when the hose is disconnected. Wipe away any spills.

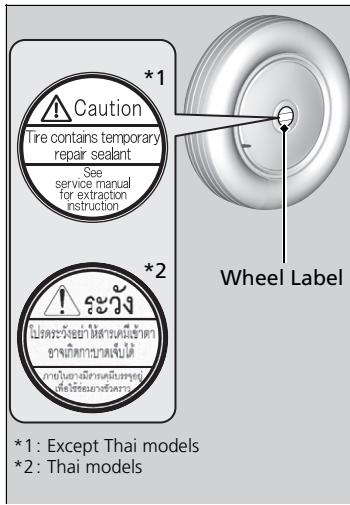
#### ►Injecting Sealant and Air

Inform the use of tyre sealant when you ask a Honda dealer or the road assistant service for replacing or repairing the flat tyre.

This air compressor is designed for the automotive tyre. Check the following:

- The power supply of the air compressor is limited to your vehicle's 12-volt DC accessory power socket.
- Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Make it cool down when using the compressor continuously.



\*1 : Except Thai models

\*2 : Thai models

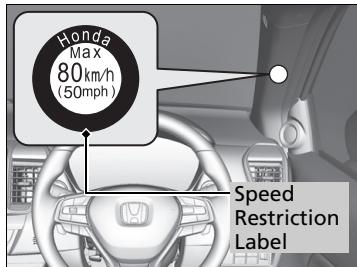
- 14.** Apply the wheel label to the flat surface of the wheel.

► The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.

- 15.** Store the tyre repair kit in the boot.

► Do not remove the sealant bottle from the air compressor.

## Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre



1. Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes.  
► Do not exceed 80 km/h.
3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

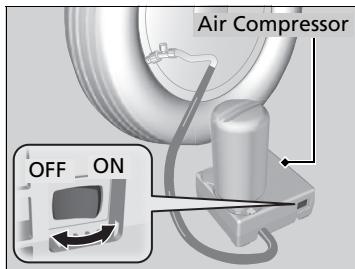
►Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

### WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.



- 4.** Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the air compressor.

► Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.

- 5.** If the air pressure is

- Less than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi): Do not add air and continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.

**⇒ Emergency Towing P. 418**

- Specified pressure more:  
Continue driving for another 10 minutes or until you reach the nearest service station.  
Do not exceed 80 km/h.
- If the air pressure does not go down after the 10 minute driving, you do not need to check the pressure any more.
- Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi), but less than specified air pressure: Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre until the tyre pressure reaches specified pressure.

**⇒ Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre**

P. 377

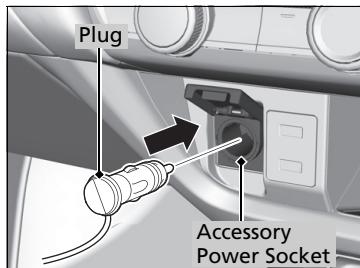
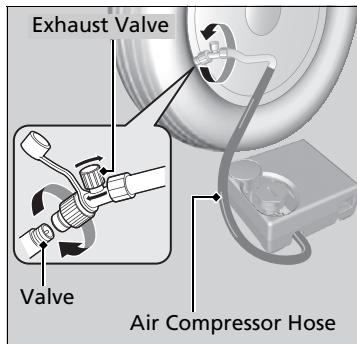
Then drive carefully for 10 more minutes or until you reach the nearest service station.  
Do not exceed 80 km/h.

► You should repeat this procedure as long as the air pressure is within this range.

- 6.** Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.
- 7.** Unscrew the compressor hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
- 8.** Repackage and properly stow the kit.

## Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.



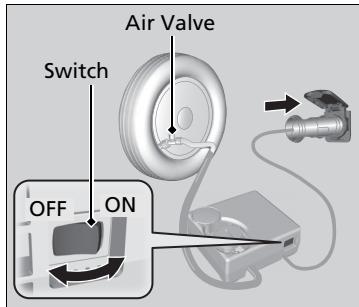
1. Take the air compressor out of the boot.
2. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
3. Remove the valve cap.
4. Attach the compressor hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.
  - Make sure the exhaust valve is closed.
5. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
  - Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
  - **Accessory Power Sockets P. 198**
6. Turn on the vehicle's power system.
  - **Carbon Monoxide Gas P. 88**
  - **Turning on the Power P. 212**

### Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

## WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.



7. Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
  - The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
  - If you have started the power system, keep the power system on while injecting air.
8. Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
9. Turn off the kit.
  - Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
  - If overinflated, turn the exhaust valve to deflate.
10. Turn on the vehicle's power system off, then unplug the air compressor from the accessory power socket.
11. Unscrew the compressor hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
12. Store the air compressor in the boot.

#### ►Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

##### NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

## Changing a Flat Tyre\*

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a compact spare tyre. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tyre repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into **P**.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

### » Changing a Flat Tyre \*

Follow compact spare precautions:

Periodically check the tyre pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.

Specified Pressure: 420 kPa (4.2 bar, 60 psi)

When driving with the compact spare tyre, keep the vehicle speed under 80 km/h. Replace with a full-size tyre as soon as possible.

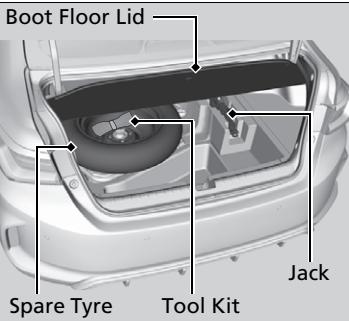
The compact spare tyre and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tyre or wheel with your vehicle.

☒**Changing a Flat Tyre\***

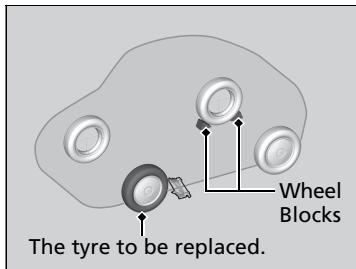
Do not mount tyre chains on a compact spare tyre. If a chain-mounted front tyre goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tyres and replace it with the compact spare tyre. Remove the flat front tyre and replace it with the full-size tyre that was removed from the rear. Mount the tyre chains on the front tyre.

A compact spare tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

## ■ Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre



1. Pull the strap on the boot floor lid and open the lid.
2. Take the tool kit and jack out of the boot.
3. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tyre.



4. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.

### » Changing a Flat Tyre \*

The compact spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.

**WARNING:** The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

#### NOTICE

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.

\* Not available on all models

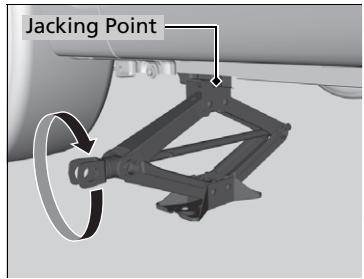
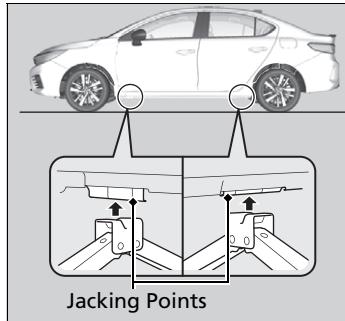


5. Place the spare tyre (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tyre that needs to be replaced.



6. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

## How to Set Up the Jack



- Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.

- Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.

► Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

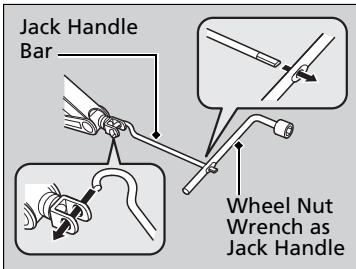
### How to Set Up the Jack

#### WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

**WARNING:** The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.



3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

#### ►How to Set Up the Jack

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

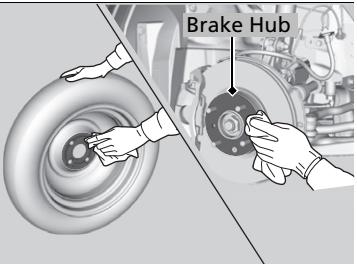
Use the jack provided in your vehicle.  
Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:

- Do not use while the power system is on.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

## Replacing the Flat Tyre

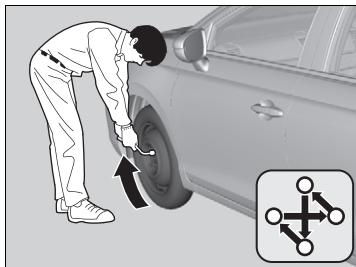
1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.



2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.
3. Mount the spare tyre.
4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.

### Replacing the Flat Tyre

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.



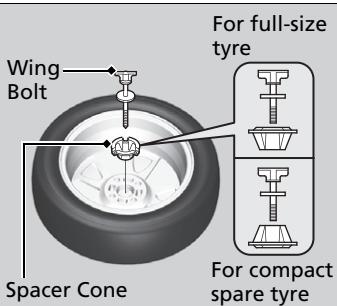
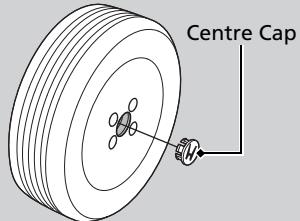
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack.  
Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.

**Wheel nut torque:**

108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

## ■ Storing the Flat Tyre

1. Remove the centre cap.



2. Place the flat tyre face down in the spare tyre well.
3. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.
4. Securely store the wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar back in the tool bag. Store the tool bag and jack in the boot.

### » Storing the Flat Tyre

## ⚠ WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.  
Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

Models with deflation warning system

## ■ Deflation Warning System and the Compact Spare Tyre

If you replace a flat tyre with the spare tyre, the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few kilometres, **Tyre Pressure Monitor System Problem** will appear on the driver information interface and the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on; however, this is normal and is no cause for concern.

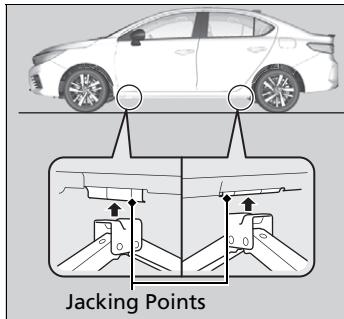
Calibrate the deflation warning system when you replace the tyre with a specified regular tyre.

☞ **Deflation Warning System Initialisation** P. 240

# Handling of the Jack

## Models with tyre repair kit

Your vehicle has jacking points as shown.  
When replacing your tyres, consult a dealer.



## Checking the Procedure

When the **READY** indicator does not come on and the **Ready to Drive** message does not appear on the driver information interface, check the following items and take appropriate action.

### » Checking the Procedure

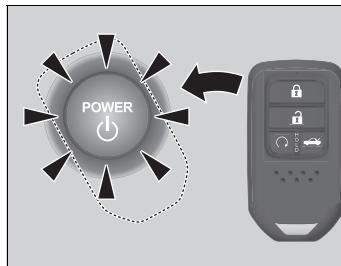
If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

#### ► If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead P. 393

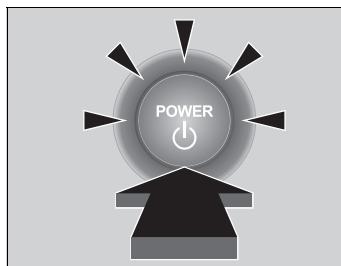
Checklist	Condition	What to Do
Check if the related indicator or driver information interface messages come on.	The <b>Temperature Too Low For Vehicle To Operate</b> message appears.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You must wait for an increase in the ambient temperature or move the vehicle to a warmer location.</li><li>• Consult a dealer if necessary.</li></ul>
	The <b>To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button</b> message appears. ► Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range. ► <b>POWER Button Operating Range</b> P. 161	<b>► If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak</b> P. 391
Check the brightness of the interior lights.	The POWER SYSTEM indicator comes on.  The interior lights are dim or do not come on at all.  The interior lights come on normally.	<p>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</p> <p>Have the 12-volt battery checked by a dealer.</p> <p>Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</p> <b>► Inspecting and Changing Fuses</b> P. 417
Check the shift position.	The transmission is not in <b>P</b> .	Change the shift position to <b>P</b> .
Check the immobilizer system indicator.	When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the power system cannot be turned on.	<b>► Immobilizer System Indicator</b> P. 102

## If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the driver information interface, the **POWER** button flashes, the **READY** indicator does not come on. Turn on the power system as follows:



1. Touch the centre of the **POWER** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **POWER** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.  
► The **POWER** button flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal and press the **POWER** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **POWER** button changes from flashing to on.  
► If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

## Emergency Power System Off

The **POWER** button may be used to turn the power system off due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must turn the power system off, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **POWER** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **POWER** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock.

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the power system is stopped.

To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, put the transmission into **P** after the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

Then press the **POWER** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

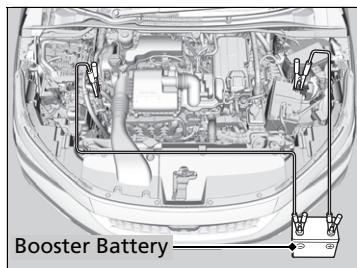
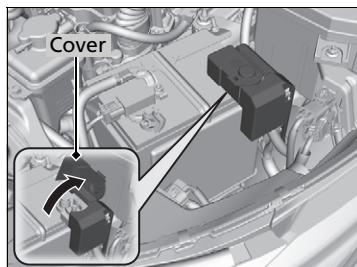
### Emergency Power System Off

Do not press the **POWER** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the power system to be turned off.

If you press the **POWER** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

## Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the power system, then open the bonnet.



1. Open the terminal cover on your vehicle's battery positive  $\oplus$  terminal.
2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's 12-volt battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
  - ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
  - ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery  $\ominus$  terminal.

### If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead

#### **WARNING**

A 12-volt battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

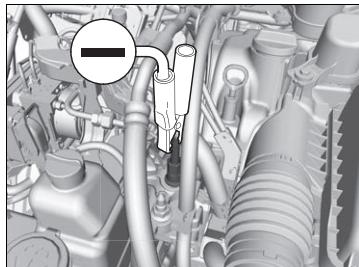
Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the 12-volt battery.

#### **NOTICE**

If a 12-volt battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen 12-volt battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

12-volt battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.



5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
6. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

## ■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery  $\ominus$  terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's 12-volt battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery  $\oplus$  terminal.

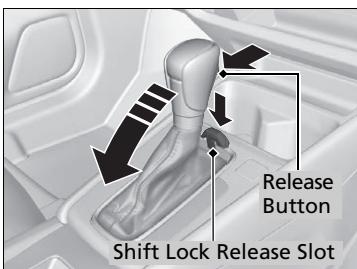
Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

### » If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead

The adaptive cruise control (ACC)\* (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, safety support\* indicators (amber) and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator\* may come on after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

\* Not available on all models

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the **P** position.



1. Set the parking brake.
  2. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.
  3. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
  4. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into **N**.
- The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

## How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The **High Temperature. Power Reduced.** message appears on the driver information interface.
- The **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.** message appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

### ■ The High Temperature. Power Reduced. Message Appears on the Driver Information Interface

The **High Temperature. Power Reduced.** message appears on the driver information interface when the power system temperature is high.

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
  - ▶ Set the parking brake, and put the transmission into **P**, and set the parking brake. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. Keep the power mode in ON, and wait until the message disappears.
  - ▶ If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

### ■ The Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool. Message Appears on the Driver Information Interface

#### ■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

#### ▶ No steam or spray present:

Keep the power system on and open the bonnet.

#### ▶ Steam or spray is present:

Turn off the power system and wait until it subsides. Then, open the bonnet.

» How to Handle Overheating

## WARNING

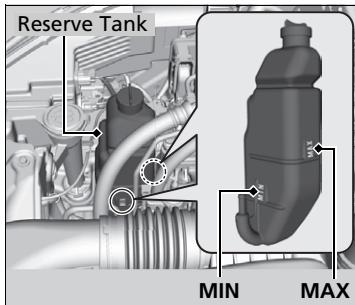
Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

#### NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.** message on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

## ■ Next thing to do



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and turn the power system off once **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.** message disappears.  
► If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately turn the power system off.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.  
► If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.  
► If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

## ■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, turn the power system on.

If the **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.** message does not appear, resume driving. If it appears again, contact a dealer for repairs.

## ▶How to Handle Overheating

### ⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

**Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.**

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

## If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears



### ■ Reasons for the warning to appear

Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.

### ■ What to do as soon as the warning appears

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

### ■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Stop the power system and let it sit for approximately three minutes.
2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.  
► **Oil Check** P. 325
3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure warning.  
► The warning disappears: Start driving again.  
► The warning does not disappear:  
Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

### » If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears

#### NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

## If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

### ►If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the power system. The power system uses the 12-volt battery to activate. You may not be able to turn the power system on again if you have turned it off with this indicator on.

## If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

### »If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

#### NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

## If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

### ■ Reasons for the indicator to blink

- There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks

- Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

### ■ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.

It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator (red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.

Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

**■ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on**  
P. 403

## If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on



(Red)



(Amber)

- If the brake system indicator (red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically

► Parking Brake P. 294

- If the brake system indicator (red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.  
► Preventing the vehicle from moving, put the transmission into **P**.
- If only the brake system indicator (red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

► If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

If you repeatedly operate the electric parking brake in a short period of time, the brake stops operating to prevent heating of the system and the indicator blinks.

It returns to its original state in approximately 1 minute.

## If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn on the power system again.

If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Models with deflation warning system

## If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on. If the compact spare tyre\* is installed, the indicator will either come on or it will first blink for about one minute, then stay on.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

- ▶ Calibrate the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

#### Deflation Warning System Initialisation P. 240

If the compact spare tyre\* causes the indicator to come on, change the tyre to a full-size tyre. The indicator goes off after calibrating the deflation warning system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tyre\* causes the indicator first blink, and then stay on, change the tyre to a full-size tyre.

The indicator goes off after calibrating the deflation warning system.

▶ If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

### NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

\* Not available on all models

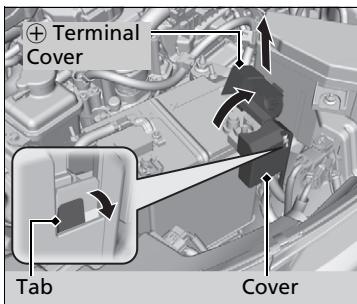
## Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

There are two fuse boxes in the engine compartment.

### ■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Type A)

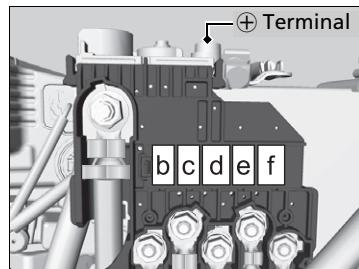
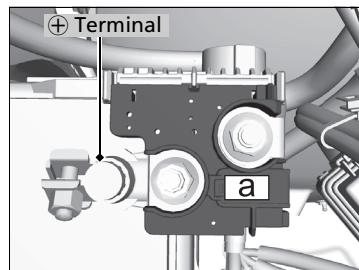
Located near the  $\oplus$  terminal on the battery.



1. Open the  $\oplus$  terminal cover.
2. Remove the cover by pulling the tab as shown.

Replacement of engine compartment fuses should be done by a dealer.

### ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

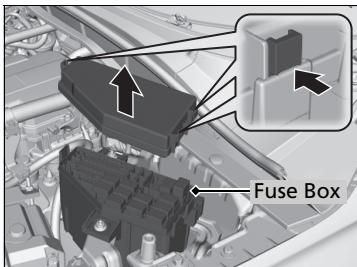


	Circuit Protected	Amps
a		MAIN 170 A
b		MAIN (FAN) 60 A
c		MAIN (ENG) 80 A
d		MAIN (HEV) 60 A
e		EPS 70 A
f		ESB 40 A

## ■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Type B)

Models with fuse number-stamped on the cover

Located in the back of the engine compartment on the left side.  
Push the tabs to open the box.



Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover mark.

### ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

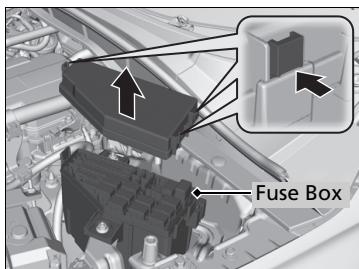
	Circuit Protected	Amps	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Wiper	30 A	16	—
2	—	—	17	Back Up FI-ECU 10 A
3	Hazard	10 A	18	Horn 10 A
4	Stop	10 A	19	— (7.5 A)
5	PCU EWP	15 A	20	Front Fog Light* (10 A)
6	EVTC	(20 A)	21	Back Up Main (15 A)
7	IMG	10 A	22	Back Up 10 A
8	IGP	15 A	23	Sub Fan (30 A)
9	IG Coil	(15 A)	24	ABS/VSA FSR 40 A
10	DBW	15 A	25	IGP2 Sub 7.5 A
11	ABS/VSA MTR	40 A	26	IGPS (LAF) 10 A
12	Main Fan	30 A	27	— —
13	—	—	28	— —
14	Engine Water Pump	30 A	29	— —
15	Battery Sensor	7.5 A	30	— —
			31	— —
			32	— —
			33	— —

\* Not available on all models

Models without fuse number-stamped on the cover

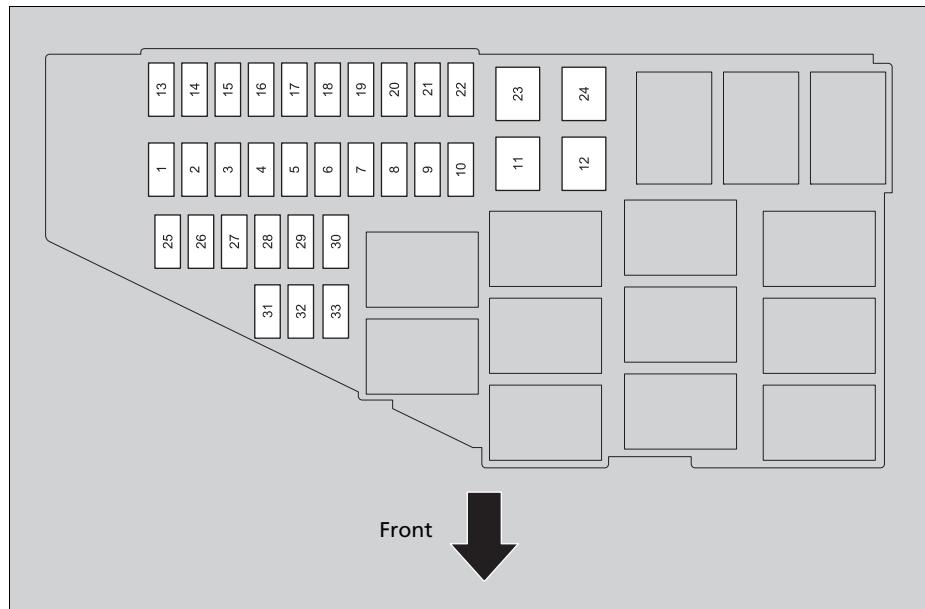
Located in the back side of the engine compartment on the left side.

Push the tabs to open the box.



Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



**■ Circuit protected and fuse rating**

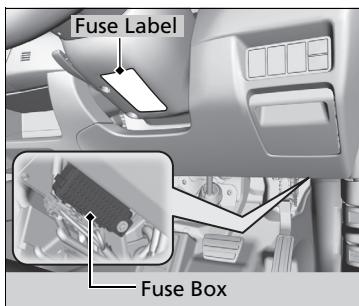
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Wiper	30 A
2	–	–
3	Hazard	10 A
4	Stop	10 A
5	PCU EWP	15 A
6	EVTC	(20 A)
7	IMG	10 A
8	IGP	15 A
9	IG Coil	(15 A)
10	DBW	15 A
11	ABS/VSA MTR	40 A
12	Main Fan	30 A
13	–	–
14	Engine Water Pump	30 A
15	Battery Sensor	7.5 A
16	–	–
17	Back Up FI-ECU	10 A
18	Horn	10 A
19	–	–
20	Front Fog Light	10 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
21	Back Up Main	15 A
22	Back Up	10 A
23	Sub Fan	30 A
24	ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
25	IGP2 Sub	7.5 A
26	IGPS (LAF)	10 A
27	–	–
28	–	–
29	–	–
30	–	–
31	–	–
32	–	–
33	–	–

## Driver's Side Interior Fuse Box

Models with interior fuse box label.

Located under the dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the label.  
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

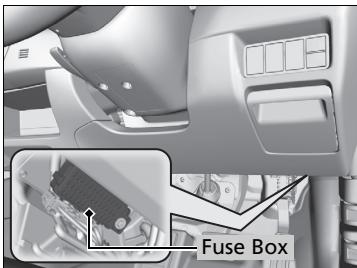
### Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Accessory	7.5 A
2	Accessory Key Lock	7.5 A
3	— (10 A)	(10 A)
4	— (7.5 A)	(7.5 A)
5	Option	10 A
6	Option2	10 A
7	Meter	10 A
8	Fuel Pump	15 A
9	A/C	10 A
10	Rear Accessory Socket	(20 A)
11	Mon	5 A
12	Right Side Door Lock	10 A
13	Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
14	Rear Left Power Window	20 A
15	Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A
16	Door Lock	20 A
17	Transmission Control Unit	(10 A)
18	—	(10 A)
19	—	(20 A)
20	Starter Cut	7.5 A
21	ACG	(10 A)
22	Daytime Running Lights	7.5 A
23	—	(10 A)
24	Option	7.5 A
25	—	(10 A)
26	Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
27	Rear Right Power Window	20 A
28	Driver's Power Window	20 A
29	Front Accessory Socket	20 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
30		Smart (10 A)
31		– (15 A)
32		– (20 A)
33		– (20 A)
34		ABS/VSA 10 A
35		SRS 10 A
36		– (20 A)
37		IMG (10 A)
38		Left Side Door Lock 10 A
39		– (10 A)

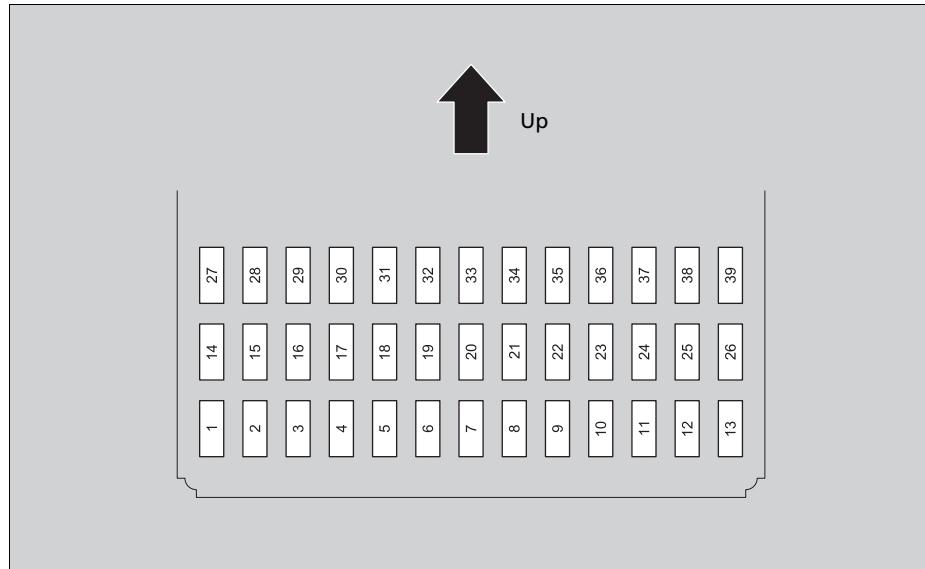
Models without interior fuse box label

Located under the dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



### ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

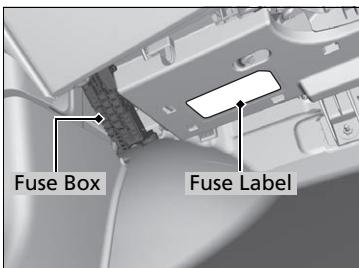
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Accessory	7.5 A
2	Accessory Key Lock	7.5 A
3	–	–
4	–	–
5	Option	10 A
6	Option2	10 A
7	Meter	10 A
8	Fuel Pump	15 A
9	A/C	10 A
10	Rear Accessory Socket	20 A
11	Mon	5 A
12	Right Side Door Lock	10 A
13	Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
14	Rear Left Power Window	20 A
15	Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A
16	Door Lock	20 A
17	Transmission Control Unit	10 A
18	–	–
19	Sunroof*	(20 A)
20	Starter Cut	7.5 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
21	ACG	10 A
22	Daytime Running Lights	7.5 A
23	–	–
24	Option	7.5 A
25	Driver's Door Lock*	(10 A)
26	Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
27	Rear Right Power Window	20 A
28	Driver's Power Window	20 A
29	Front Accessory Socket	20 A
30	Smart	10 A
31	–	–
32	–	–
33	–	–
34	ABS/VSA	10 A
35	SRS	10 A
36	–	–
37	IMG	10 A
38	Left Side Door Lock	10 A
39	Driver's Door Unlock*	(10 A)

\* Not available on all models

## Passenger's Side Interior Fuse Box

Models with interior fuse box label



Fuse locations are shown on the label. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

### Circuit protected and fuse rating

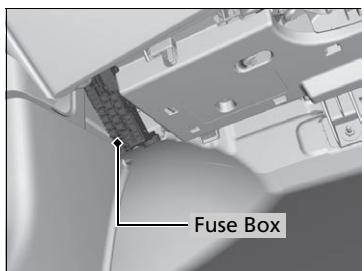
		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Fuse Box Main1*1	60 A
2		IG Main	30 A
3		IG Main 2	30 A
4		Relay Module1	30 A
5		Relay Module2	30 A
6		Fuse Box Main2	40 A
7		—	(40 A)
8		—	—
9		—	(40 A)
10		—	(30 A)
11		—	—
12		Heater Motor	30 A
13		Rear Demister	30 A
14		SRS	10 A
15		IG Hold 3	(10 A)

		Circuit Protected	Amps
16		IG Hold 1	(10 A)
17		Smart	(10 A)
18		ACC Socket (Console2)*	(20 A)
19		—	—
20		—	—
21		Washer	15 A
22		—	—
23		IG Hold 2	(15 A)
24		—	—
25		—	—

\*1: Replacement of this fuses should be done by a dealer.

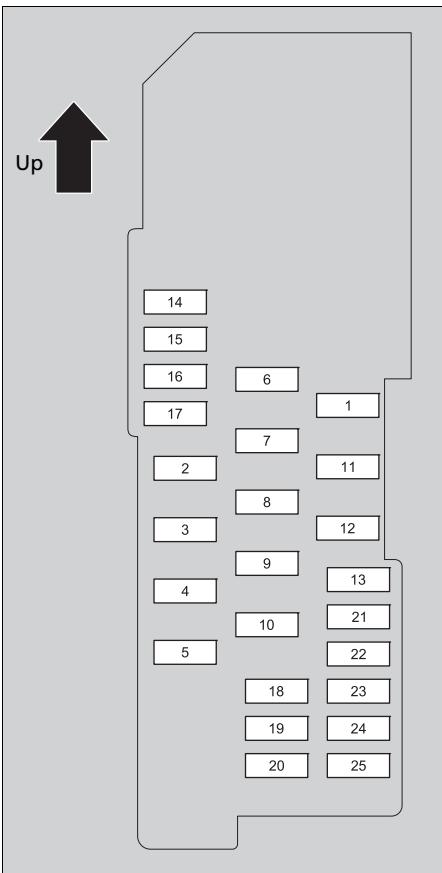
**Models without interior fuse box label**

Located under the dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



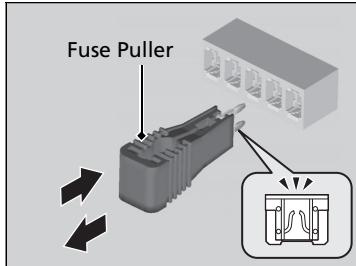
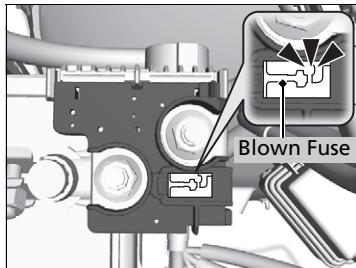
**■ Circuit protected and fuse rating**

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Fuse Box Main1 <sup>*1</sup>	60 A
2	IG Main	30 A
3	IG Main 2	30 A
4	Relay Module1	30 A
5	Relay Module2	30 A
6	Fuse Box Main2	40 A
7	Fuse Box Option*	(40 A)
8	–	–
9	–	–
10	–	–
11	–	–
12	Heater Motor	30 A
13	Rear Demister*	(30 A)* (40 A)*
14	SRS	10 A
15	IG Hold 3	10 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
16	IG Hold 1	10 A
17	Smart	10 A
18	ACC Socket (Console2)	20 A
19	–	–
20	–	–
21	Washer	15 A
22	–	–
23	IG Hold 2	15 A
24	–	–
25	–	–

\*1: Replacement of this fuses should be done by a dealer.

## Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuses in the engine compartment.
  - If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.
4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
  - If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.
5. Inspect the small fuses in the vehicle interior.
  - If there is a burned out fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

### ▶▶ Inspecting and Changing Fuses

#### NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

#### Models with fuse label

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.

#### Models without fuse label

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage.

#### Fuse Locations P. 406, 407, 410

#### All models

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

There is a fuse puller on the type B engine compartment fuse box cover.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

## ■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

**This is the best way to transport your vehicle.**

## ■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

## » Emergency Towing

### NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

### NOTICE

Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flat bed equipment.

» **Parking Brake** P. 294

# Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.



**Specifications** ..... 420

## **Identification Numbers**

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN),  
Engine Number, Motor Number and  
Transmission Number..... 422

**Devices that Emit Radio Waves\*** ..... 423

## **TCU Open Source Licence\***

Free/Open Source Software Information..424

# Specifications

## ■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	City <sup>1</sup>
	Ballade <sup>2</sup>
Curb Weight	1,222-1,227 kg <sup>3</sup> 1,246 kg <sup>4</sup>
Maximum Permissible Weight	1,700 kg <sup>3, *4</sup>
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	Front 925 kg <sup>3, *4</sup> Rear 780 kg <sup>*, *4</sup>

\*1: Except African models

\*2: African models

\*3: Thai models

\*4: Malaysian models

## ■ Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC
Bore x Stroke	73.0 x 89.5 mm
Displacement	1,498 cm <sup>3</sup>
Compression Ratio	13.5 : 1
Spark Plugs	NGK DILZKAR7C11H DENSO DXE22HCR11H

## ■ Fuel

Type	Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher <sup>1</sup> Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher <sup>2</sup>
Fuel Tank Capacity	40 L

\*1: Thai models

\*2: Except Thai models

## ■ 12-V Battery

Capacity	28AH(5)/35AH(20) <sup>1</sup> 32AH(5)/40AH(20) <sup>2, *3</sup>
----------	--

\*1: Indian and African models

\*2: Southeast Asian models

\*3: Latin American models

## ■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	1.8 L
---------------	-------

## ■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	55 W (H7) <sup>*1</sup> LED <sup>*2</sup>
Headlights (High Beam)	60 W (HB3) <sup>*1</sup> LED <sup>*2</sup>
Fog Lights*	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	21 W (Amber) <sup>*1</sup> LED <sup>*2</sup>
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights	LED
Brake Lights	LED
Taillights/Rear Side Marker Lights	LED
Taillights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21 W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	16 W
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Rear Licence Plate Lights	5 W
Interior Lights	
Front Map Lights	8W <sup>*3</sup> LED <sup>*4</sup>
Rear Map Lights*	LED
Ambient Light*	LED
Ceiling Light*	8 W
Centre Pocket Light	LED
Boot Light	5 W
Foot Lights*	LED

\*1: Models without side curtain airbags

\*2: Models with side curtain airbags

\*3: Models without sunroof

\*4: Models with sunroof

## Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	405 - 455 g

## Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

## Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda ATF DW-1
Capacity	Change 1.8 L

## Engine Oil

Recommended	Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20 ACEA A5/B5, API service SM or higher grade 0W-20
	Change 3.1 L
Capacity	Change including filter 3.3 L

## Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	3.85 L (change including the remaining 0.45 L in the reserve tank)

## Tyre

Regular	Size	185/55R16 87H
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Compact	Size <sup>*1</sup>	T135/80D15 99M T135/80D15 100M
Spare*	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Wheel Size	Regular	16 x 6J
	Compact Spare*	15 x 4T

\*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

## Indian model only

The tyres fitted in the vehicles meet the requirement of the BIS and they comply with the requirements under the central motor vehicles rules (CMVR), 1989.

## Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric parking brake system

## Vehicle Dimensions

### Malaysian models

Length	4,554 mm
Width	1,748 mm
Height	1,467 mm
Wheelbase	2,600 mm
Track	Front 1,495 mm Rear 1,485 mm

### Thai models

Length	4,553 mm
Width	1,748 mm
Height	1,467 mm
Wheelbase	2,589 mm
Track	Front 1,497 mm Rear 1,485 mm

### Latin American models

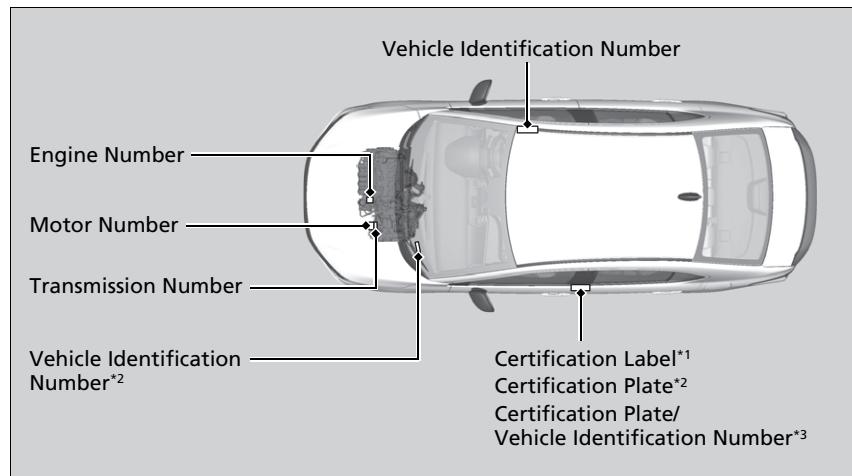
Length	4,553 mm
Width	1,748 mm
Height	1,477 mm
Wheelbase	2,600 mm
Track	Front 1,493.5 mm Rear 1,485 mm

\* Not available on all models

## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle.

The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number, motor number and transmission number are shown as follows.



\*1: Thai and Latin American models

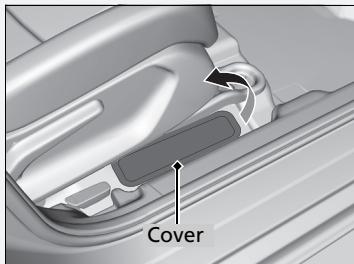
\*2: African models

\*3: Indian and Malaysian models

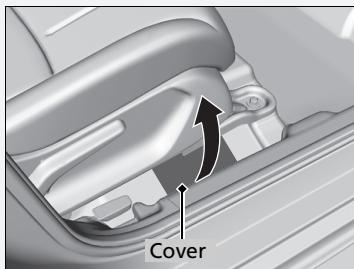
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.

### Southeast Asian and Latin American models



### Indian and African models



# Devices that Emit Radio Waves\*

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Thai models

TCU\*



**CLASS B**  
**NTC ID. B38014-19-0322**

This telecommunication equipment conforms to Technical Standard or Technical Requirement of National Broadcasting and Telecommunications Commission (NBTC).

This radiocommunication equipment has the electromagnetic field strength in compliance with the Safety Standard for the Use of Radiocommunication Equipment on Human Health announced by the National Telecommunications Commission.

\* Not available on all models

## Free/Open Source Software Information

---

This product contains Free/Open Source Software(FOSS).

The licence information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.

*<https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/tcu/honda/>*

## A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) .....	300
Accessories and Modifications .....	360
Accessory Power Sockets .....	198
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System.....	228
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) .....	258
Adding	
Coolant .....	327
Engine Oil .....	326
Washer .....	330
Additives, Engine Oil .....	324, 325
Adjusting	
Armrest .....	190
Front Seats.....	183
Head Restraints.....	186
Headlights .....	169
Mirrors.....	180
Rear Seats.....	189
Steering Wheel .....	179
Temperature .....	110
Agile Handling Assist.....	237
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System).....	200
Changing the Mode.....	200
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows .....	202
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	353
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode.....	200, 201
Sensors .....	203
Using Automatic Climate Control.....	200
Air Pressure .....	421

## Airbags

Airbags .....	49
After a Collision.....	52
Airbag Care .....	58
Event Data Recorder .....	1
Front Airbags (SRS) .....	51
Indicator .....	57, 100
Sensors.....	49
Side Airbag .....	54
Side Curtain Airbag .....	56
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....	300
Indicator .....	99
Armrest .....	190
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking .....	149
Auto High-Beam .....	170
Automatic Brake Hold.....	96, 298
Indicator .....	96, 298
Automatic Brake Hold System	
Indicator .....	298
Average Fuel Economy.....	114
Average Speed.....	117

## B

Battery .....	10, 349
12-Volt Battery Charging System	
Indicator .....	97, 400
High Voltage .....	10, 242
If the Battery Is Dead .....	393
Maintenance (Checking the Battery) .....	349
Belts (Seat) .....	38
Beverage Holders .....	194

## Booster Seats (For Children)

Booster Seats (For Children) .....	86
Boot .....	150
Lid.....	150
Light Bulb.....	341

## Brake System

Brake System .....	294
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).....	300
Automatic Brake Hold .....	298
Brake Assist System .....	301
Fluid.....	329
Foot Brake.....	297
Indicator.....	94, 95, 96, 402
Parking Brake .....	294

## Brightness Control (Instrument Panel)

Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) .....	177
Bulb Replacement .....	332
Back-Up Lights .....	337
Boot Light .....	341
Brake Lights .....	335
Ceiling Light.....	340
Fog Lights .....	334
Front Turn Signal Lights.....	334
Headlights.....	332
High-Mount Brake Light .....	339
Map Lights .....	340
Position/Daytime Running Lights.....	334
Rear Licence Plate Lights .....	338

Rear Side Marker Lights .....	335
Rear Turn Signal Lights .....	335
Side Turn Signal Lights .....	334
Taillights.....	335, 337

## Bulb Specifications

.....	420
-------	-----

<b>C</b>	
Carbon Monoxide Gas .....	88
Carrying Luggage .....	209, 210
Certification Label .....	422
Changing Bulbs .....	332
Charging System Indicator .....	97, 400
Child Restraint System .....	59
Booster Seats .....	86
Child Restraint System for Infants .....	63
Child Restraint System for Small Children .....	65
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt .....	82
Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System .....	78
Larger Children .....	85
Rearward Facing Child Restraint System .....	63
Selecting a Child Restraint System .....	66
Using Tether .....	84
Child Safety .....	59
Childproof Door Locks .....	148
Cleaning the Exterior .....	357
Cleaning the Interior .....	355
Climate Control System .....	200
Changing the Mode .....	200
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows .....	202
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	353
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode .....	200, 201
Sensors .....	203
Using Automatic Climate Control .....	200
Clock .....	134
<b>CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking System)</b> .....	246
<b>Coat Hook</b> .....	197
<b>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)</b> .....	246
<b>Compact Spare Tyre</b> .....	421
<b>Console Compartment</b> .....	193
<b>Controls</b> .....	133
<b>Coolant (Engine)</b> .....	327
Adding the Coolant .....	328
Checking the Coolant .....	327
Overheating .....	397
<b>Creeping</b> .....	220
<b>Cruise Control</b> .....	229
Indicator .....	102
<b>Cup Holders</b> .....	194
<b>Customize</b> .....	123
<b>D</b>	
<b>Daytime Running Lights</b> .....	174
<b>Dead Battery</b> .....	393
<b>Deceleration Paddle Selector</b> .....	224
<b>Deflation Warning System</b> .....	238
<b>Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows</b> .....	202
<b>Devices that Emit Radio Waves</b> .....	423
<b>Dimming</b>	
Headlights .....	165
<b>Dipstick (Engine Oil)</b> .....	325
<b>Directional Signals (Turn Signals)</b> .....	164
<b>Door Mirrors</b> .....	181
<b>Doors</b> .....	136
Auto Door Locking .....	149
Auto Door Unlocking .....	149
Door/Boot Open Indicator .....	37
Keys .....	136
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside .....	145
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside .....	138
Lockout Prevention System .....	144
<b>Drive Cycle Score/Lifetime Points</b> .....	131
<b>Driver Information Interface</b> .....	111
<b>Driver's Side Pocket</b> .....	195
<b>Driving</b> .....	207
Braking .....	294
Cruise Control .....	229
Shifting Gear .....	221
Transmission .....	220
Turning on the Power .....	212
<b>Dust and Pollen Filter</b> .....	353
<b>E</b>	
<b>e:HEV</b> .....	9
<b>Eco Assist System</b> .....	14
<b>Eco Drive Display</b> .....	121
<b>ECON Mode</b> .....	227
<b>Elapsed Time</b> .....	117
<b>Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator</b> .....	101, 404

Emergency	418
Emergency Stop Signal	302
<b>Engine</b>	
Coolant	327
If the Battery Is Dead	393
Number	422
Oil	324
Starting	212
Switch Buzzer	161
<b>Engine Coolant</b>	327
Adding the Coolant	328
Checking the Coolant	327
Overheating	397
<b>Engine Oil</b>	324
Adding	326
Checking	325
Recommended Engine Oil	324
<b>Engine Status Display</b>	122
<b>EPS (Electric Power Steering) System</b>	101
<b>Exhaust Hazard (Carbon Monoxide)</b>	88
<b>Exterior Care (Cleaning)</b>	357
<b>Exterior Mirrors</b>	181

## F

<b>Features</b>	205
<b>Filter</b>	
Dust and Pollen	353
<b>Flat Tyre</b>	365
<b>Fluids</b>	
Brake	329

<b>Engine Coolant</b>	327
Windscreen Washer	330
<b>Fog Light Indicator</b>	101
<b>Folding Down the Rear Seats</b>	189
<b>Foot Brake</b>	297
<b>Front Airbags (SRS)</b>	51
<b>Front Seats</b>	184
Adjusting	184
<b>Front Wide View Camera</b>	292
<b>Fuel</b>	25, 309
Fuel Economy and CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions	311
Gauge	109
Instant Fuel Economy	114
Low Fuel Indicator	99
Range	114
Recommendation	309
Refueling	309
<b>Fuel Economy</b>	115
<b>Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions</b>	311
<b>Fuel Fill Cap</b>	25, 310
<b>Fuel Fill Door</b>	25, 310
<b>Fuses</b>	406
Inspecting and Changing	417
Locations	406, 407, 410, 414

## G

<b>Gauges</b>	109
<b>Glass (care)</b>	356, 358
<b>Glove Box</b>	193
<b>G-Meter</b>	118

## H

<b>Halogen Bulbs</b>	332, 333
<b>Hazard Warning Button</b>	4
<b>Head Restraints</b>	186
<b>Headlights</b>	165
Adjuster	169
Aiming	332
Dimming	165
Operating	165
<b>High Voltage Battery</b>	242
<b>High Voltage Battery Charge Level</b>	
Gauge	122
<b>High-Beam Indicator</b>	101
<b>Honda Sensing</b>	26, 243
<b>Hybrid Vehicle</b>	
e:HEV	9

## I

<b>Identification Numbers</b>	422
Engine, Motor and Transmission	422
Vehicle Identification	422
<b>Illumination Control</b>	
Knob	177
<b>Immobilizer System</b>	153
Indicator	102

<b>Indicators</b> .....	92
12-Volt Battery Charging System .....	97
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System).....	99
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (Amber)...	105
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (White/Green).....	105
Auto High-Beam.....	101
Automatic Brake Hold.....	96, 298
Automatic Brake Hold System.....	96, 298
CRUISE CONTROL.....	102, 231
CRUISE MAIN .....	102, 229, 231
Deceleration Paddle Selector.....	98
ECON Mode .....	102
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System .....	101
EV .....	98
Fog Light .....	101
High-Beam .....	101
Immobilizer System.....	102
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (Amber) .....	105
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (White/Green).....	106
Lights On .....	101
Low Fuel.....	99
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System.....	103
Malfunction Indicator Lamp.....	97
Parking Brake and Brake System (Red).....	94, 95
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber).....	96
Power System.....	98
READY .....	98
Safety Support (Amber).....	106, 107
Safety Support (Green/Gray).....	108
Seat Belt Reminder .....	99
Security System Alarm .....	102
Shift Position .....	97
Speed Alarm Indicator .....	104
Supplemental Restraint System.....	100
System Message Indicator .....	104
Transmission System.....	97
Turn Signal .....	101
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System .....	100
VSA OFF.....	100, 236
<b>Instant Fuel Economy</b> .....	114
<b>Instrument Panel</b> .....	91
Brightness Control.....	177
<b>Interior Lights</b> .....	191
<b>Interior Rearview Mirror</b> .....	180
<b>J</b>	
<b>Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench)</b> .....	383
<b>Jacking Points</b> .....	389
<b>Jump Starting</b> .....	393
<b>K</b>	
<b>Key Number Tag</b> .....	137
<b>Keys</b> .....	136
Lockout Prevention.....	144
Number Tag.....	137
Rear Door Won't Open .....	148
Remote Transmitter .....	138
Types and Functions.....	136
<b>Kickdown</b> .....	220
<b>L</b>	
<b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b> .....	274
<b>Light Switches</b> .....	165
<b>Lights</b> .....	165, 332
Bulb Replacement .....	332
Daytime Running Lights .....	174
Fog Lights .....	168
High-Beam Indicator Light.....	101
Interior.....	191
Lights On Indicator.....	101
Turn Signals .....	164
<b>Load Limits</b> .....	210
<b>Locking/Unlocking</b> .....	136
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking .....	149
Childproof Door Locks .....	148
From Inside .....	145
From Outside .....	138
Keys .....	136
Using a Key .....	143
<b>Lockout Prevention System</b> .....	144
<b>Low Battery Charge</b> .....	400
<b>Low Fuel Indicator</b> .....	99
<b>Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation</b>	
<b>Warning System Indicator</b> .....	103, 405

Lower Anchorages .....	78
Lubricant Specifications Chart .....	421
Luggage (Load Limit).....	210

## M

Maintenance .....	313
12-Volt Battery .....	349
Brake Fluid.....	329
Cleaning .....	355
Climate Control .....	353
Coolant .....	327
Oil .....	325
Precautions .....	314
Radiator .....	328
Remote Transmitter .....	352
Replacing Light Bulbs .....	332
Safety .....	315
Transmission Fluid .....	329
Tyres.....	344
Under the Bonnet .....	322
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	97, 401
Map Lights.....	192
Maximum Permissible Weight .....	210
Meters, Gauges .....	109
Mirrors .....	180
Adjusting .....	180
Door .....	181
Exterior .....	181
Interior Rear View .....	180
Modifications (and Accessories).....	360

## Motor

Number .....	422
--------------	-----

## N

Numbers (Identification) .....	422
--------------------------------	-----

## O

Odometer .....	110
Oil (Engine) .....	324
Adding .....	326
Checking.....	325
Low Oil Pressure Warning .....	399
Recommended Engine Oil.....	324
Viscosity .....	324

## Opening/Closing

Bonnet .....	323
Boot .....	150
Power Windows .....	155
Sunroof .....	159

## Outside Temperature

Adjusting.....	110
----------------	-----

## Overheating

.....	397
-------	-----

## P

Parking Brake .....	294
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator .....	94, 95, 96, 402
Parking Sensor System .....	305
Passing Indicators .....	165

## Petrol

Fuel Economy and CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions .....	311
Gauge .....	109
Information .....	309
Instant Fuel Economy .....	114
Low Fuel Indicator .....	99
Refueling.....	309
POWER Button .....	161
Power Flow .....	122
POWER/CHARGE Gauge .....	109
Precautions While Driving .....	219
Rain .....	219
Pregnant Women .....	46
Puncture (Tyre) .....	365

## R

Radiator .....	328
Range .....	114
Rear Demister Button .....	178
Rear Seats (Folding Down) .....	189
Rear Sunshade .....	199
Refueling .....	309
Fuel Gauge.....	109
Low Fuel Indicator .....	99
Petrol .....	309, 420
Remote Engine Start .....	214
Remote Transmitter .....	138

<b>Replacement</b>	
12-Volt Battery	349
Bulbs	332
Fuses	406, 407, 410, 414
Wiper Blade Rubber	342
<b>Resetting a Trip Meter</b>	114
<b>Road Departure Mitigation</b>	285
On and Off	288
 <b>S</b>	
<b>Safe Driving</b>	33
<b>Safety Check</b>	37
<b>Safety Labels</b>	89
<b>Safety Message</b>	0
<b>Safety Support</b>	119
<b>Seat Belts</b>	38
Checking	47
Fastening	44
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt	82
Pregnant Women	46
Reminder	41
Warning Indicator	41, 99
<b>Seats</b>	183
Adjusting	183
Front Seats	184
Rear Seats	189
<b>Security System</b>	153
Immobilizer System Indicator	102
Security System Alarm Indicator	102
<b>Select Lever</b>	221
<b>Selecting a Child Restraint System</b>	66
<b>Setting the Clock</b>	134
<b>Settings</b>	123
<b>Shift Lever</b>	221
Operation	221
Releasing	396
Shift Position Indicator	223
Won't Move	396
<b>Shifting (Transmission)</b>	221
<b>Side Airbags</b>	54
<b>Side Curtain Airbag</b>	56
<b>Spare Tyre</b>	421
<b>Spark Plugs</b>	420
<b>Specifications</b>	420
<b>Specified Fuel</b>	309
<b>Speedometer</b>	109
<b>SRS Airbags (Airbags)</b>	51
<b>Steering Wheel</b>	179
Adjusting	179
<b>Stopping</b>	303
<b>Sunroof</b>	159
<b>Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)</b>	51
<b>Switches (Around the Steering Wheel)</b>	4, 5, 161
 <b>T</b>	
<b>TCU Open Source Licence</b>	424
<b>Temperature</b>	
Outside Temperature Display	110
<b>Temperature Sensor</b>	110, 203
<b>Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre</b>	365
<b>Temporary Repair Kit (TRK)</b>	365
<b>Time (Setting)</b>	134
<b>Tools</b>	364
<b>Towing a Trailer</b>	211
<b>Towing Your Vehicle</b>	
Emergency	418
<b>Transmission</b>	221
Creeping	220
Fluid	329
Kickdown	220
Number	422
Operating the Shift Lever	221, 223
Shift Lever Does Not Move	396
Shift Position Indicator	223
Shifting	221
<b>Trip Meter</b>	114
<b>TRK (Temporary Repair Kit)</b>	365
<b>Troubleshooting</b>	363
Blown Fuse	406, 407, 410
Brake Pedal Vibrates	29
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door	31
Emergency Towing	418
Noise When Braking	32
Overheating	397
Power System Won't Start	390
Puncture/Flat Tyre	379
Rear Door Won't Open	30
Shift Lever Won't Move	396
Warning Indicators	92

Turn signals .....	164
Indicators (Instrument Panel) .....	101
Turning on the Power .....	212

  Does Not Start .....

    390

  Engine Switch Buzzer.....

    161

  If the Battery Is Dead.....

    393

Tyres.....

  Air Pressure.....

    421

  Checking and Maintaining .....

    344

  Inspection .....

    345

  Puncture (Flat Tyre) .....

    379

  Rotation.....

    348

  Spare Tyre.....

    421

  Wear Indicators.....

    346

## U

Under-Floor Storage Area .....

    196

Unlocking the Doors .....

    138

Unlocking the Driver's Doors from the

  Inside .....

    145

## V

Vanity Mirrors .....

    7

Vehicle Identification Numbers .....

    422

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) .....

    235

  Off Button .....

    236

  OFF Indicator .....

    100

  System Indicator .....

    100

Ventilation .....

    200

Viscosity (Oil) .....	324, 421
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist).....	235

## W

Warning Indicator On/Blinking .....

    399

Warning Labels .....

    89

Watts .....

    420

Wear Indicators (Tyre) .....

    346

Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle) .....

    383

Window Washers

  Adding/Refilling Fluid.....

    330

  Switch .....

    175

Windows (Opening and Closing).....

    155

Windscreen

  Cleaning.....

    356, 358

  Defrosting/Defogging .....

    202

  Washer Fluid .....

    330

  Wiper Blades .....

    342

  Wipers and Washers .....

    175

Wipers and Washers .....

    175

  Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades .....

    342

Worn Tyres .....

    344

